ŠKODA

Vehicle handover documentation

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Date of vehicle handover _____ / _____ / _____

Partner ŠKODA
Dealer's stamp and signature

I confirm that the car has been properly handed over to me and that I have been informed of the correct way to use it and of the warranty conditions.
Customer's signature

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐**YES**

☐**NO**

Limit ŠKODA extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____

or:

km: _____

or

miles: _____

[a)] Whichever comes first.

Printing, reproduction, translation or other use of this work or any part thereof is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

All proprietary rights in this work arising from copyright regulations shall be exercised exclusively by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

Changes to this work are subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s., tř. Václava Klementa 869, Mladá Boleslav II, 293 01 Mladá Boleslav, Česká republika

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2022

Vehicle owner

1. Vehicle owner

Official vehicle registration number:

_____

Vehicle owner (Title, Name / Company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

2. Vehicle owner

Official vehicle registration number:

_____

Vehicle owner (Title, Name / Company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owner

5 About the Owner's Manual

6 About the Owner's Manual

7 Video tutorials

8 Explanations

9 Instructions in infotainment
9 Functionality

11 Vehicle overviews
11 Front and lateral areas of the vehicle
13 Rear vehicle area
14 Driver's seat
14 Centre console and passenger seat
15 Engine compartment

16 Warning lights
16 Functionality
16 Warning lights overview

19 Correct and safe
19 Introductory notes for correct use
19 New vehicle or new parts
19 Regular checks
19 Improper vehicle adjustments
20 Sensor and camera maintenance
20 Engine compartment
20 Handling operating fluids
20 12 volt vehicle battery
21 Electrical sockets in the vehicle
21 Before your journey
21 Sitting safely
21 Correct belt webbing arrangement
22 Correct steering wheel position
22 Securing children properly
22 Transporting objects safely
23 Safe driving
23 Stop the vehicle safely!
24 Exiting the vehicle
24 Different weather conditions
24 Emergency call
25 After an accident

27 Keys, locks and alarm system
27 Key
28 Central locking
30 Keyless locking
31 Alarm system

32 Doors, windows and boot lid
32 Doors
32 Child safety lock on the rear doors
32 Protective door strip
33 Window – with manual operation
33 Window – with electrical operation
34 Sun visors – with electrical operation
34 Sun visors
35 Boot lid – with manual operation
35 Boot lid – with electrical control
36 Unlocking the boot lid

37 Seats, steering wheel and mirror
37 Front seat – with manual operation
37 Front seat – with electrical operation
37 Rear seats
38 Park position of rear seat belts
38 Headrests
39 Front armrest
39 Rear armrest
39 Steering wheel
40 Interior rear-view mirror
40 Wing mirror

42 Restraint systems and airbags
42 Seat belts
43 Child seat
44 Fasteners for child seats
47 Airbags
48 Key switch for the front passenger airbag

49 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
49 Exterior lighting
50 Daylight running lights
50 Automatic driving lights function
50 High beam and headlight flasher
50 Turn signal
51 Fog light
51 Hazard warning lights function
51 Parking light function
51 CORNER function
52 Adaptive functions of the headlights
52 Function COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME
52 High-beam assist system Light Assist
53 Replace light bulbs
55 Interior lighting
56 Interior ambient light
56 Windscreen wipers and washers

59 Heating and air conditioning system
59 Heating
59 Manual air conditioning
60 Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
61 Heated windscreen
62 Seat heating
62 Heated steering wheel

63 Driver information system
63 Analogue instrument cluster
64 Digital instrument cluster
66 Driving data
67 Speed limit warning
67 Vehicle status

69 Infotainment Swing
69 Infotainment overview
69 System
70 Screen
71 Infotainment keyboard
71 Control centre
72 Radio
74 Media
77 Mobile device management
78 Telephone
80 Wi-Fi
81 SmartLink

84 Infotainment Bolero
84 Infotainment overview
84 System
85 Screen
86 Infotainment keyboard
86 Control centre
87 Radio
89 Media
92 Mobile device management
93 Telephone
95 Wi-Fi
96 SmartLink

99 Infotainment Amundsen
99 Infotainment overview
99 System
100 Screen
101 Infotainment keyboard
102 Voice control
103 Control Centre
104 Radio
107 Media
111 Images
112 Mobile device management
113 Telephone
116 Wi-Fi
118 SmartLink
120 Navigation

125 Online Services
125 ŠKODA Connect
126 MyŠKODA application
126 User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services
126 Setting personal data protection
127 User management
129 Personalisation
130 Management of online services
130 eSIM data connection
131 Online System Update
132 Shop
132 Information call
132 Breakdown call
133 Service schedules
133 Vehicle status report
133 ŠKODA Connect-Services

134 Starting and driving
134 Starting with the key
134 Start at the push of a button
135 Starting issues
135 START STOP
136 Manual gearbox
136 Automatic gearbox
138 Vehicle driving mode
138 Economical driving style
139 Towing a trailer
140 Towing eye and towing procedure
141 Brakes
142 Handbrake

143 Driver assist systems
143 Braking and stabilising systems
144 Front Assist
145 Pedestrian detection system
145 Speed limiter
146 Cruise control system
147 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
150 Lane Assist
151 Travel Assist
152 Lane change assist system Side Assist
153 Traffic Sign Recognition
154 Crew Protect Assist
154 Driver Alert

155 Park Assist systems
155 Park Pilot parking aid
156 Rear view camera
156 Rear Traffic Alert
157 Park steering assistant

159 Engine, exhaust system and fuel
159 Bonnet
159 Engine oil
161 Coolant
162 Engine electronics
162 Particle filter
162 Exhaust control system
162 Radiator blinds
163 Fuel filler flap

163 Petrol
164 CNG (compressed natural gas)

167 12 volt vehicle battery and fuses
167 12 volt vehicle battery
168 Using the jump-starting cable
169 Fuses
170 Fuses in the dash panel
171 Fuses in the engine compartment

172 Wheels
172 Tyres and rims
173 All-season or winter tires
173 Snow chains
174 Spare and emergency spare wheel
174 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
176 Breakdown kit
177 Tyre pressure
178 Tyre pressure monitor
178 Wheel bolt cover caps
179 Full wheel frame

180 Storage space and interior equipment
180 Equipment in the boot
180 Emergency equipment
181 Tool kit
181 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
181 Fasteners in the boot
182 Bag hooks in the luggage compartment
182 Cargo elements in the luggage compartment
183 Storage net
183 Hook on the eyelet of the TOP TETHER system
183 Fastening nets
183 Storage pocket
184 Net partition
184 Double-sided floor covering
184 Rigid boot cover
184 Variable loading floor in the boot
185 Interior equipment front
186 Interior equipment rear
186 Car park ticket holder
186 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door
187 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door
187 USB-connections
188 The clothes hook on the middle door pillar
188 Glasses compartment
188 Card holder on the armrest
188 Storage compartment under the front seat
188 Storage compartment for an umbrella
189 Phonebox
189 Cup holder
190 Cup holder Easy Open
190 Multimedia holder
190 Waste container
190 Ashtray and cigarette lighter
191 Folding table
191 Tablet holder
192 12-Volt power socket

193 Roof rack and hitch
193 Roof rack
193 Swivelling hitch

196 Maintaining and cleaning
196 Service events
196 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
197 Interior
198 Exterior
199 Ice scraper

200 Technical data and specifications
200 Technical data regulations
200 Vehicle identification data
200 Maximum permissible weights
201 Operating weight
202 Vehicle dimensions
202 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
202 Personal data
203 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
206 Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices
206 Information on trademarks
206 Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

209 Engine specifications
209 1.0 l/66 kW engine TSI G-TEC
209 1.0 l/70 kW engine TSI
209 1.0 l/81 kW engine TSI
210 1.0 l/85 kW engine TSI
210 1.5 l/110 kW engine TSI
210 1.6 l/81 kW engine MPI

211 Index

About the Owner's Manual

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **illustrations** in these operating instructions are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Printed version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance, and only some technical parameters.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- Amundsen Infotainment system *» page 9*
- On website ŠKODA
- In mobile application MyŠKODA

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala

About the Owner's Manual

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **illustrations** in these operating instructions are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- Amundsen Infotainment system » *page 9*
- On website ŠKODA
- In mobile application MyŠKODA

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala

Video tutorials

The video instructions are for illustration only, the images may differ from your vehicle.

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala

Overview of video tutorials

An overview of the video tutorials appearing in this manual.

- Side Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 153***
- Lane Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 151***
- Fatigue detection assist – activation ***» page 154***
- Light Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 53***
- ACC - setting ***» page 150***
- Front Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 145***
- KESSY - operation ***» page 31***
- Dynamic Road Sign Display – how it works ***» page 154***
- Emergency calls ***» page 25***

Explanations

“Specialist garage”
“Specialist garage” is a workshop that carries out specialist service operations for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be both a ŠKODA Authorised workshop or ŠKODA Partner, who is authorized to provide services as well as an independent workshop.

Authorised workshop ŠKODA
“An authorised workshop of ŠKODA” is a garage that is contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to service ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Partner ŠKODA
“A Partner of ŠKODA” is a company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes
“**Pressing**” – short press (e.g. of a button) for up to 1 second

“**Holding**” – long press (e.g. of a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications
All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the vehicle's forward direction of travel.

Units
Values are given in metric units.

Where units of length are given in miles, these are English miles.

⚠ DANGER
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION
Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE
Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Instructions in infotainment

Functionality

You can display the Owner's Manual in the Infotainment system under **MENU** > > .

If is not displayed, check for available system updates.

The initial menu contains tiles with the contents of the manual and a search field.

- How to search
- Interactive images
- Symbols
- Topics
- Find
- Tutorial videos
- Simply Clever
- About the instructions

Search

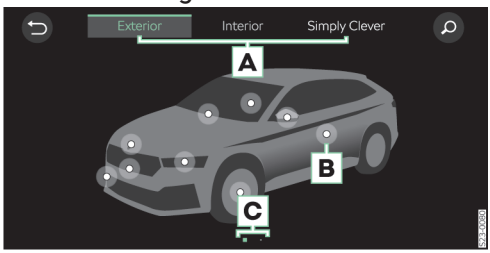
1. Tap .
2. Find the desired term and confirm it.

Or:

- Enter and confirm the desired expression in the search box with the magnifying glass symbol.

- To ensure a successful search, use specific language characters, e.g. å, æ, ø, ü, í, š.
- When entering a search term, use the words that the system offers according to the part of the search term you have already entered.
- If you download a manual in a language other than the factory set language, select the appropriate additional keyboard language for the search function. If no such language is available, select another language containing the necessary language characters.

Interactive images



A Switching between car interior/exterior and depending on vehicle equipment Simply Clever elements

B Displaying information or a detailed image

C Switching between images

Symbols

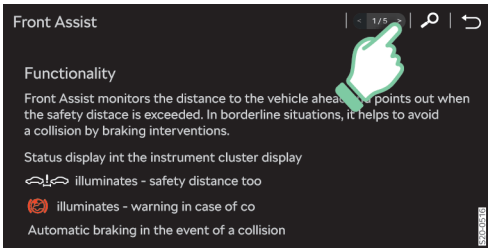
The menu contains an overview of all the indicator lights that can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

For each indicator light there is an explanation and a link to detailed information.

Topics – variant 1

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.

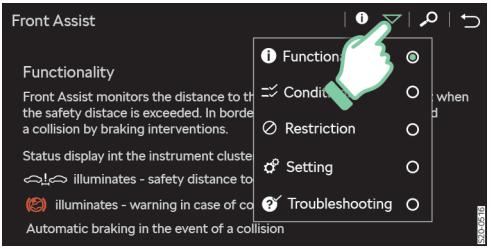


- To display more information, press > or <.

Topics – variant 2

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.



› To display more information, press ▼.

Tutorial videos

Depending on vehicle equipment.

› Link and QR–code to the website with all available video guides for your car

› Overview of the individual video guides

After selecting a video guide from the overview, a link and QR–code to the website with the corresponding video guide will be displayed.

Simply Clever

Depending on vehicle equipment.

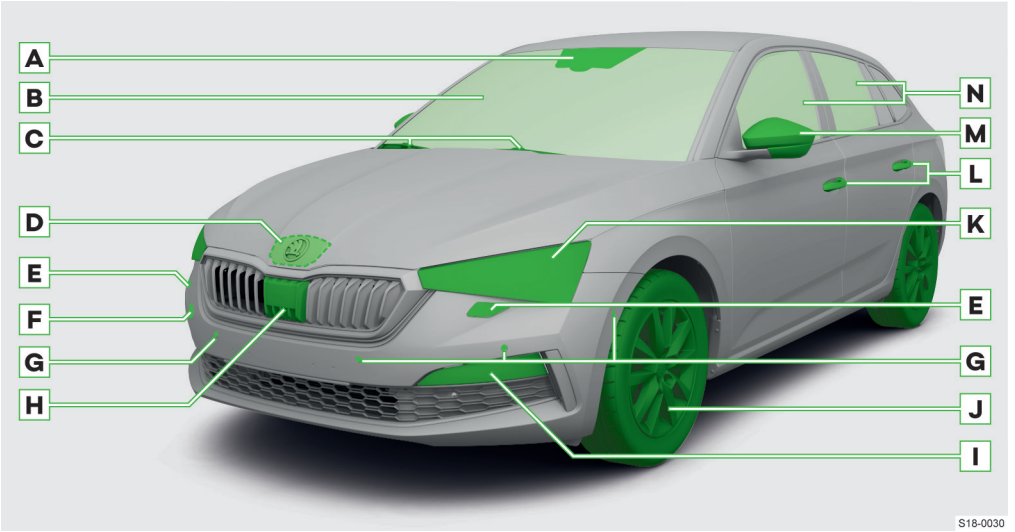
Overview of individual Simply Clever car equipment elements.

About the manual

The menu contains, for example, the choice of the language of the manual, updates and legal information.

Vehicle overviews

Front and lateral areas of the vehicle



A Under the windscreen (depending on the vehicle equipment):
- Camera for assist systems
- Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 50
- Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 56

B Windscreen – heating » page 61

C Windscreen wiper – operation » page 56

D Bonnet release lever (under the flap) » page 159

E Headlamp cleaning system » page 56

F Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 140

G Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

H Front radar sensor for assist systems

I Fog lights – operation » page 51

J Wheels:
- Tyres and rims » page 172
- Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 174
- Breakdown kit » page 176.
- Tyre pressure » page 177
- Tyre pressure monitor » page 178

K Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Operation » page 49

› Light Assist high-beam assist system » page 52
› Replace light bulbs » page 53

L Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
› Open door » page 32
› Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 30

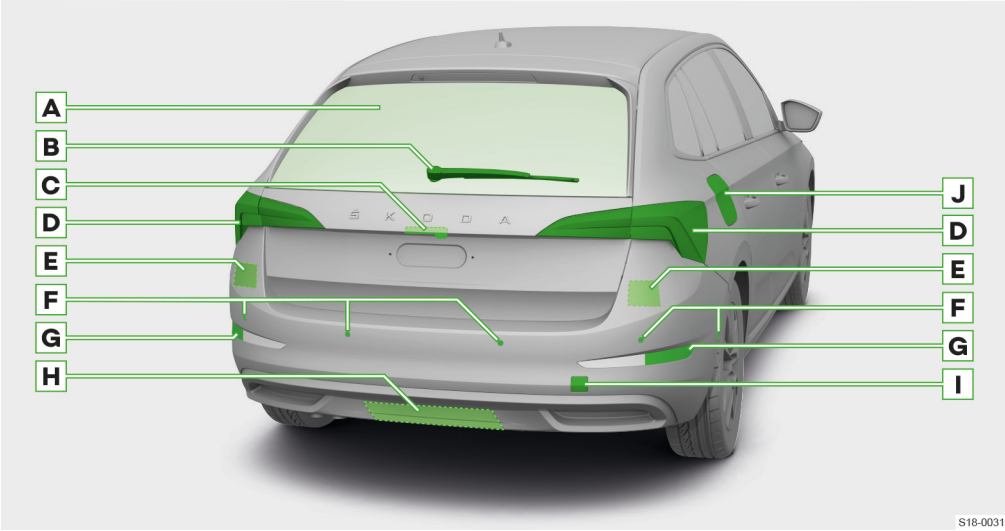
M Exterior mirror – operation » page 40

N Side door windows – operation » page 33.

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 20.

Rear vehicle area

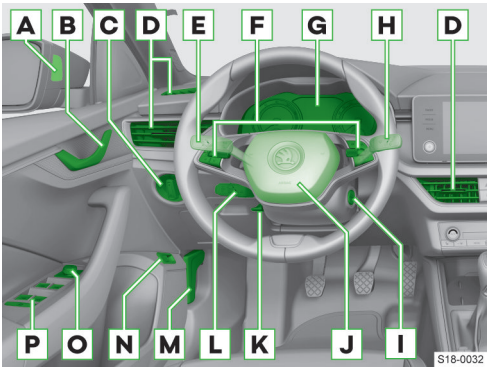


- **A** Rear window – heating » page 61
- **B** Rear window wiper and washer – operation » page 56
- **C** Boot lid handle (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Boot lid with manual operation » page 35
  - Boot lid with electrical operation » page 36
  - Assistance systems camera
- **D** Tail lights:
  - Operation » page 49
  - Replacing light bulbs » page 53
- **E** Radar sensors for assist systems (inside bumper)
- **F** Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems
- **G** Rear fog light – operation » page 51
  Rear fog light is only on the driver´s side
- **H** Swivel towing bracket » page 193
- **I** Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 140
- **J** Fuel filler cap (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Opening » page 163
  - Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures » page 177
  - Sticker with specified fuel
  - Ice scraper
  - CNG filler neck » page 165

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

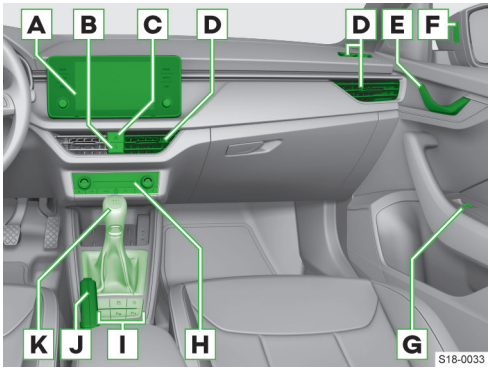
› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 20.

Driver's seat



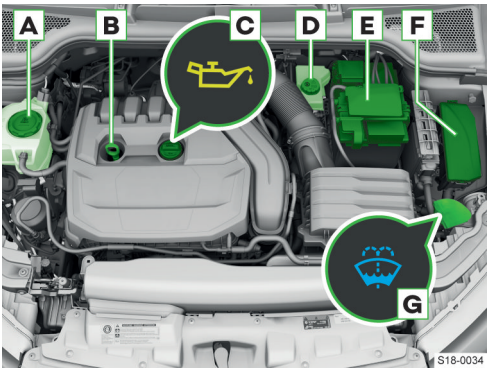
- **A** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light *» page 152*
- **B** Door opening lever *» page 32*
- **C** Light switch *» page 49*
- **D** Air outlet nozzle
- **E** Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Turn signal
  - › Main beam
  - › Speed regulating system *» page 147*
  - › Speed limiter *» page 145*
  - › High beam assist system *» page 52*
- **F** Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel *» page 39*
- **G** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
  - › Analogue instrument cluster *» page 63*
  - › Digital instrument cluster *» page 64*
- **H** Operating lever:
  - › Windscreen wipers and washers *» page 56*
  - › Information system *» page 63*
- **I** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
  - › Ignition lock *» page 134*
  - › Starter button *» page 134*
- **J** Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag *» page 47*
- **K** Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment *» page 39*
- **L** Operation of the automatic distance control *» page 148*
- **M** Bonnet release lever *» page 159*
- **N** Button for the electric boot lid *» page 36*
- **O** Exterior mirror operation *» page 40*
- **P** Window operation *» page 33*.

Centre console and passenger seat



- **A** Infotainment (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Amundsen *» page 99*
  - › Bolero *» page 84*
  - › Swing *» page 69*
- **B** Central locking system *» page 28*
- **C** Hazard warning lights function *» page 51*
- **D** Air outlet nozzle
- **E** Door opening lever *» page 32*
- **F** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light *» page 152*
- **G** Window operation in the passenger door *» page 33*
- **H** Operation (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Heating *» page 59*
  - › Manual air conditioning *» page 59*.
  - › Climatronic *» page 60*
- **I** Keys (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Ⓐ START-STOP *» page 135*
  - › P Park Pilot *» page 155*
  - › P Park Assist *» page 157*
  - › MODE Driving mode selection *» page 138*
- **J** Parking brake *» page 142*
- **K** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
  - › Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) *» page 136*
  - › Selector lever (automatic gearbox) *» page 136*

Engine compartment



A Coolant expansion reservoir » page 161
B Engine oil dipstick » page 160
C Engine oil filler opening » page 160
D Brake fluid reservoir » page 141
E 12 volt vehicle battery » page 167
F Fuse box » page 171
G Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 57

Warning lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the illuminated indicator lights and associated messages on the instrument cluster display may result in accidents, serious injury or damage to the vehicle.

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

Additional indicator lights

The additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights:

⚠ – Hazard

⚠ – Warning

Warning lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details » *page 16, Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a hazard in conjunction with another warning lamp » *page 16*.
	Front and rear seat belts not in use » *page 42*.
	12-volt vehicle battery is not charging » *page 168*.
	In conjunction with  – engine fault » *page 161*, » *page 168*.
	Engine oil pressure too low » *page 160*.
	Engine oil level too low » *page 160*.
	Coolant level too low » *page 161*.
	Coolant temperature too high » *page 161*.
	Brake fluid level too low » *page 142*.
	In conjunction with (ABS) – brake system and ABS faulty » *page 144*.
	Lights up – parking brake switched on » *page 142*.
	Lights up – power steering faulty » *page 39*.
	Flashes – steering column lock faulty » *page 40*.
	Automatic gearbox faulty » *page 138*.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » *page 137*.
	Take control immediately » *page 151*.
	Warning of collision risk » *page 144*.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » *page 148*.
	Indicates a warning in conjunction with another warning lamp » *page 16*.
	The petrol supply has reached the reserve area. » *page 164*.
	The natural gas supply has reached the reserve area. » *page 165*.
	Washer fluid level too low » *page 57*.
	Bulb faulty » *page 49*.
	Rear fog light switched on » *page 51*.
	Engine oil level too high or engine oil level sensor faulty » *page 160*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Particle filter blocked » page 162.
	ABS faulty » page 144.
	Worn brake pads » page 142.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 137.
	Automatic gearbox faulty » page 137.
	Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator faulty » page 178.
	Tyre pressure change » page 173, » page 178.
	Lights up – power steering faulty » page 39.
	Flashes – steering column lock not unlocked » page 40.
	Flashes – steering column lock faulty » page 40.
	KESSY – start problem » page 135.
	KESSY – no key found » page 30.
	Shock absorber faulty » page 138.
EPC	Fault in the engine control system » page 162.
	Emission control system faulty » page 162.
ON	Front passenger airbag activated » page 48.
	Flashes in conjunction with OFF – key-operated switch for airbag deactivation faulty » page 48.
OFF	Front passenger airbag deactivated » page 48.
	Airbag system faulty » page 48.
	Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 154.
	Ball rod not locked » page 194.
	ASR deactivated » page 143.

Symbol	Meaning
	Lights up – ESC or ASR faulty » page 144.
	Flashes – ESC or ASR intervening » page 143.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 144.
	Front Assist not available » page 144.
	ACC not available » page 149.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 150.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 150.
	Left turn signal » page 50, » page 51.
	Right turn signal » page 50, » page 51.
	Rear seat belt in use » page 42.
	Trailer turn signal light » page 51.
	Front fog light switched on » page 51.
	Gear lever is locked » page 136.
	Natural gas operation » page 165.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 150.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 150.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 148.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 148.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 146.
	Lights up – speed limiter is regulating the vehicle speed » page 145.
	Flashes – the speed limiter's set limit has been exceeded » page 145.
	Travel Assist activated - the lane guidance is active » page 151.
	Travel Assist activated – the cruise control system is active » page 151.

Symbol	Meaning
	Travel Assist activated » page 151.
	Low outside temperature » page 64.
	Main beam or headlight flasher switched on » page 50.
	Seat belt on the rear seat not in use » page 42.
	Seat belt on the rear seat in use » page 42.
	Seat belt on the rear seat not in use » page 42.
	Illuminated - unoccupied rear seat » page 42.
	Flashes – rear seat belt not fastened » page 42.
	Seat belt on the rear seat in use » page 42.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 52.
	The lights are not switched on » page 49.
	Take control » page 151.
	Shock absorber faulty » page 138.
	Service events » page 196.
	Natural gas system test » page 165.
	Engine was shut down automatically by START-STOP » page 135.
	Engine was not shut down automatically by START-STOP » page 136.
	Natural gas operation » page 165.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 146.
	Lights up – speed limiter activated » page 145.
	In conjunction with – speed limiter is regulating the vehicle speed » page 145.
	ACC not available » page 149.
	ACC activated » page 148.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout » page 148.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 148.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction » page 148.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 148.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 147.
	Cruise control activated » page 146.
	Along with – cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 146.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 144.
	Front Assist not available » page 144.
	Front Assist is being activated » page 144.
	Safe distance not kept » page 144.
	Consumption-friendly driving » page 139.
	Break recommendation » page 154.
	Driving mode Normal » page 138.
	Driving mode Eco » page 138.
	Driving mode Individual » page 138.
	Driving mode Sport » page 138.

Correct and safe

Introductory notes for correct use

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle » *page 202* can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.
- All work on the vehicle's safety systems may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This concerns e.g. the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, please note the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's instruction manual. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- Please note the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle - Running in the engine

Driving style during the first 1500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- During the first 1000 km, rev the engine to max. 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- Over the next 500 km, the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 800 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

New tyres

New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

Regular checks

What should be taken into account before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Is the tyre undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Is the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level OK?
- Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
- Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
- Is the spoiler working properly?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there no oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

Improper vehicle adjustments

Improper changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect safety-relevant and other functions of the vehicle.

› Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
› Never cover the engine with additional insulation material, e.g. with a cover.

Sensor and camera maintenance

Certain functions are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

In some cases, dirt or ice and water on sensors and cameras may be detected as an obstruction or an interference with object detection.

Accessories such as bike racks installed at the rear of the vehicle can also impair the functioning of the sensors and cameras.

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean and do not cover or stick anything over them.
› If you suspect that the sensors and the cameras may be damaged, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine compartment

Before opening the engine compartment flap

Risk of scalding! Do not open the engine compartment flap if steam or coolant comes out of the engine compartment.

› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Remove the ignition key. On vehicles with a keyless locking system, open the driver's door.

Explanation of the warning symbols on the sticker in the engine compartment



Do not touch the engine compartment!
Be careful of hot parts!
Be careful of rotating parts!
Risk of electric shock!
Use prescribed engine oil.

When working in the engine compartment

› Keep children away from the engine compartment.
› Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan can turn itself on, even when the ignition is off.
› Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the 12 Volt vehicle battery.
› Do not smoke near the vicinity of the engine and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
› If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, be mindful of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
› Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling operating fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids to operate that can affect health or the environment when they are emitted. These are fuel, oils, battery acid from the 12-volt vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid.

› Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If required, wear protective equipment.
› Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
› In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If required, seek medical help.
› The leaked engine oil in the engine compartment can cause a fire, so wipe it off with a cloth.
› Store cloths soiled by brake fluids in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12 volt vehicle battery

Handling the 12-volt vehicle battery

The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Improper handling of the 12 volt vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

› When handling the 12-volt vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
› Do not tilt the 12-volt vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.
› If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
› Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12-volt vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12-volt vehicle battery.
› Do not use a damaged 12-volt vehicle battery.

› Short circuit! The battery poles of the 12-volt vehicle battery are not connected.

Electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper use of the sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

› The sockets can get warm during operation. Do not touch sockets that have become warm.
› Protect sockets from liquids.
› If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
› Do not insert any objects into the contacts of the socket.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects – everything has its place in the vehicle. Observe the following instructions so that all occupants are protected in the best possible way in the event of an accident.

Before you go

› Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach external devices, e.g. navigation system, so that they do not restrict the view externally.
› Adjust the rearview mirrors.
› Close all doors and the engine compartment and boot flap.
› Take up the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that passengers do likewise.

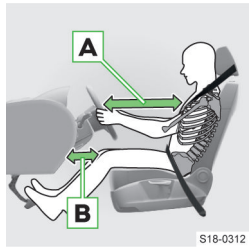
Always leave the seat belt on while driving.

› Only one person can be secured with a seat belt.
› Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g. in the door or in the seat.
› Check seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed:

› Stand the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
› Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
› Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
› On the occupied rear seat, the headrest should not be in the lower position although the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
› Keep your feet in the footwell.
› Use the entire seat.
› Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
› Do not hold your limbs out the window.



› Adjust the driver's seat in the longitudinal direction so that the pedals can be fully pushed through with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and sternum is at least 25 cm.
› For vehicles with driver's knee airbag, adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the distance B from the legs to the dash panel in the area of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
› Adjust the angle of the backrest so that the steering wheel can be reached at the top with your arms slightly bent.
› Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of 25 cm from the dash panel.

Correct belt webbing arrangement



The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

› The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body (it must not run over loose layers of clothing).
› The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
› In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
› The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.

› The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
› The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
› The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

Correct steering wheel position

Incorrect steering wheel position can lead to serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the airbag deploys.



› Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position.

Securing children properly

› Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
› Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 44.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat – when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

A child that has been properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When moving heavy objects, there is a shift in emphasis. Thus, the driving behaviour of the vehicle changes.

› Adjust driving speed and driving style to this changed driving behaviour.

Unsecured or misplaced items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle!

In a rear-end collision at 50 km/h unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A 1.5 litre water bottle is thrown with up to 75 kg.

› Transport objects securely.
› Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver.

Keep the driver footwell clear.

› Stow small items in the storage compartments.
› Do not leave lockable storage compartments open.
› Do not let items protrude out of the slots.

This note does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.

› Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
› Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it, so that it cannot slip.

› Place heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

› Pay attention when you are driving. As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
› Always adjust your driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

› If the vehicle issues a warning signal, park the vehicle safely and follow the information on the instrument cluster and in this Owner's Manual.

Use assist systems

The assist systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

The assist systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

› Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
› Familiarise yourself with the assist systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
› Activate, deactivate and adjust the assist systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

The detection ranges of parking systems have blind spots where obstacles and people are not detected.

› When using parking systems, look in the direction in which you are parking and keep an eye on the area around the car.
› Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects.

Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel

A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel » page 174 is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

› Inflate the wheel to the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
› Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
› Do not cover the warning label.
› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.
› Do not drive with more than one spare wheel mounted.
› Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

› Adapt your speed and driving style to allow for this.

Driving with a trailer

The vehicle driving characteristics change with a trailer attached. The behaviour of the assist systems may also be different.

› Drive slowly, because excessive speed can lead to loss of control.
› Keep a greater distance from the vehicle in front of you.
› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball and the permissible trailer weight.

Driving through water

There must be no water ingress into the vehicle, e.g. the engine intake.

› Therefore, determine the depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
› Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse or stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

› Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
› If you have any safety concerns, stop driving and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
› Immediately remove foreign objects stuck in the tyre tread.
› Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tyre.

  Check the tyre pressure and seek assistance from a specialised garage.
› Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely!

A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

› For parking, look for a place with suitable ground.

Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

› Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Turn off the engine.
› For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
› Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle!

› When handling the seats, releasing the parking brake, etc. injuries can occur.
› In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
› At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
› When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside.

Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle *» page 28*.

Different weather conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will tell you the following:

› Is it possible to operate the vehicle in your country?
› Is it necessary to take certain measures to ensure that the vehicle is fully functional?
› Is it necessary to take certain measures to avoid vehicle damage, e.g. B. changing the coolant, the 12-volt vehicle battery, etc.?

Emergency call

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› Emergency calls cannot be made if there is a system fault.
› Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.
› This emergency service is only available in certain countries.
› If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data will be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Emergency call system battery backup

The backup battery ensures the function of the emergency call system even if the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or defective.

The lifetime of the backup battery is at least three years, so it is recommended to have it checked by a specialized garage after this time.

Discharged or damaged backup battery

If the battery is discharged or damaged, a message will appear on the instrument panel display.

› Have the battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.
› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Functionality

After the call is initiated, the emergency call centre simultaneously receives information such as the accident location and its severity, the number of passengers involved and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident – automatic call

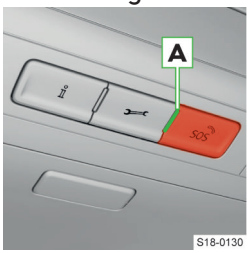
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically made to the emergency call centre.

An automatic call to the emergency call line is also initiated when the Emergency Assist system intervenes.

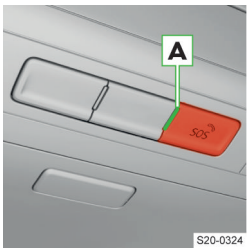
Minor accident – call option

The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

Indicator light



Option 1



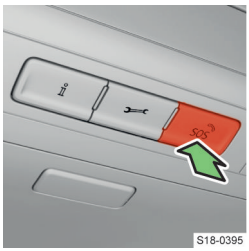
Option 2

The system status is displayed when the ignition is switched on and the warning light A illuminates.

- Green – illuminated – the system is functional
- Green – flashing – a call is being made to the emergency call centre
- Red – illuminated – there is a system fault, seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Not illuminated – the system is out of order due to long–term unavailability of the mobile network. If this problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operation

Manual call



Version 1



Version 2

- Keep the SOS button pressed down.
- Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
- To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the Infotainment screen.

ⓘ Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

Video – Emergency call

Emergency call – operation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-breakdown-call

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Put on the reflective vest.
- In the case of natural gas vehicles, remove any objects that spark or set fire to the vehicle (e.g. put out cigarettes, etc.).
- Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- Report the accident to the emergency services. If it is a natural gas vehicle, inform the emergency services.
- Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems

After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

- Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
- Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Put on the reflective vest.
- Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- Report the fire to the emergency services. If it is a natural gas vehicle, inform the emergency services.
- Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

⚠ WARNING

If it concerns a natural gas vehicle, follow the instructions below:

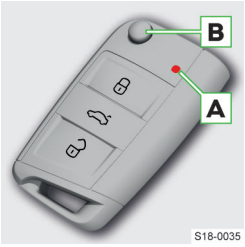
› Do not try to extinguish the fire yourself.

› Do not stand close to the burning vehicle.

Keys, locks and alarm system

Key

Key overview



- The vehicle is locked
- Operating the boot lid
- The vehicle is unlocked
- **A** Battery status warning light
- **B** Locking button for folding the key part in/out

ⓘ NOTICE

- Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.
- Keep the grooves in the key clean.

ⓘ The key signal rage is approximately 30 m. The range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

- After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:

- A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.
- Replace the battery **» page 27, Changing the key battery**.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons:

- The battery in the key is empty.
- Replace the battery **» page 27, Changing the key battery**.
- The key is not synchronized.

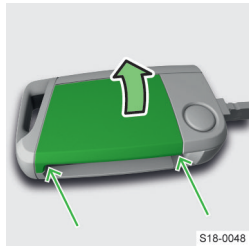
Synchronize the key as follows:

- Press any button on the key.
- Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder **» page 29**.

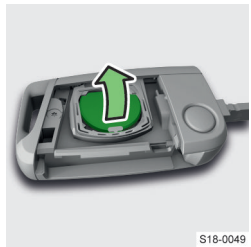
ⓘ If necessary, the key must be synchronized if a favoured button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

Changing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery.



- Fold out the key bit.
- Release the battery cover with your thumbnail or by inserting a flat-head screwdriver at the marked points.
- Open the battery cover.



- Remove the battery.
- Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
- Insert the new battery.
- Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

- Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.
- Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

Environment

- The discharged battery does not belong in the household waste.
- Dispose of the discharged battery in an environmentally friendly manner.

Dispose of the charging cable in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking

The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Unlock indicator: Double flashing of the turn signal lights

Lock indicator: Single flashing of the turn signal lights.

The indicator light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

The SAFE function

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the central locking system may include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function disables the internal door handles from being used to open the doors after locking the car.

The SAFE function is automatically activated when the car is locked from the outside.

When the ignition is switched off, a message on the SAFE function appears on the instrument cluster display.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

› There must be no persons in a locked vehicle with the SAFE function activated.

Switching off the SAFE function

› Double command to lock within 2 seconds.

Or:

› Together with the deactivation of interior monitoring *» page 31, Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it goes out and after 30 seconds it flashes regularly at longer intervals.

If the SAFE function is switched off, you can open the door from the inside by pulling once the handle.

The SAFE function is activated again when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Automatic locking after starting

When the speed exceeds 15 km/h, all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are automatically locked. Locking is indicated by the lighting up of the symbol in the central locking button.

The automatic locking system can prevent unauthorised entry into the vehicle during a short stop.

To unlock the vehicle, use one of the following methods:

› Open some of the doors from the inside.
› Press the central locking button
› Remove the key from the ignition (depending on vehicle equipment)

The vehicle will unlock automatically when the airbags are activated.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked automatically can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Operation

Central locking operation

Depending on vehicle equipment:

› Key *» page 27*
› Keyless locking (KESSY) *» page 30*
› Central locking button

Locking/unlocking using the central locking button

› Press the button in the middle part of the dash panel.

The symbol in the button lights up when it is locked.

The button locks/unlocks all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by opening the door from the inside.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked with the central locking button can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

All doors

Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door

The button on the key can be used to unlock the front door and the fuel filler flap.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

The button can be used to unlock the door on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

- The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.
- Then it lights up continuously.
- After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.
- Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The vehicle cannot be locked - the battery in the key is discharged

Applies to right-hand drive vehicles.

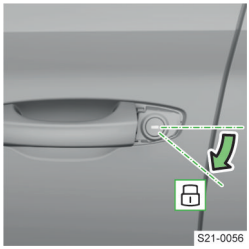


Remove the cover

- Pull the handle on the front left door and hold it in place.
- Insert the key into the recess on the underside of the cover.
- Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Release the door handle.

Lock:

- Take a seat in the passenger seat.
- Close all doors.
- Lock/unlock using the central locking button
- Get out of the vehicle and close the door.



- Insert the key with the buttons facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock.
- Check if the infotainment system is online:

Install cover

- Pull on the door handle and hold it.
- Replace the cover.
- Release the door handle.

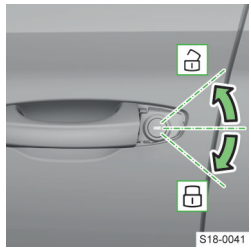
Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



Remove the cover

- Pull the handle on the front left door and hold it in place.
- Insert the key into the recess on the underside of the cover.
- Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Release the door handle.



Unlock:

- Insert the key with the buttons facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock.

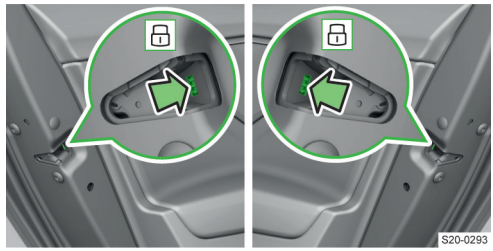
Lock:

- Insert the key with the buttons facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock.

Install cover

- Pull on the door handle and hold it.
- Replace the cover.
- Release the door handle.

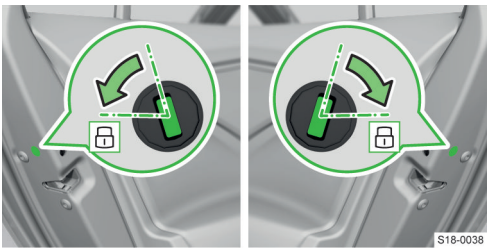
Locking the door without the lock cylinder - variant 1



- Open the door.
- Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
- Use the key or a flat-blade screwdriver to push it in towards the door.

After closing, the door is locked.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder - variant 2



› Open the door.
› For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
› Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
› Turn the key or flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (spring-loaded position).

After closing, the door is locked.

Keyless locking

Usage

The keyless locking system (KESSY) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

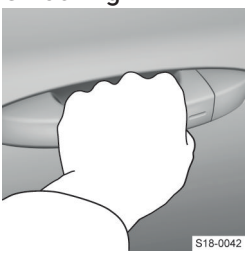
Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The door handle sensors are designed to be operated with the bare hand, e.g. a gloved hand may limit the function of the sensors.

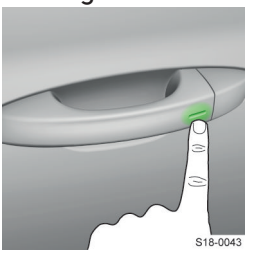
If the door handle is dirty, the function of the sensors may be limited.

Unlocking



› Hold the door handle.
› Open the door.

Locking



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock the door within 2 seconds by holding the handle. This allows you to check whether the car is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle on the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If the key is locked in the boot, the boot lid will automatically unlock itself.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Touch the sensor on the external door handle with your finger within 5 seconds.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

› To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the exterior door handle.

The door should remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle

› Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.
› If keyless locking does not work, seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

When the ignition was switched on, no key was found

illuminates
Message that no key was found in the vehicle

› Insert the key into the vehicle.

Video – Keyless locking (KESSY)

KESSY - operation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-kessy

Alarm system

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when the following events occur:

- Opening the bonnet
- Opening the boot lid
- Opening the door
- Manipulation of the ignition lock
- Towing the vehicle
- Movement in the vehicle
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system
- Uncoupling the trailer
- Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

For the correct functioning of the alarm system, all windows must be closed.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

ⓘ Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time:

- Interior monitoring
- Towing protection

Deactivation will also switch off the SAFE function ***» page 28, Functionality***.

Deactivation

› By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

› In infotainment in the menu **CAR** > > > Menu item for interior monitoring

Or:

› In infotainment in the menu **MENU** > > > > Menu item for interior monitoring

The deactivated functions are reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

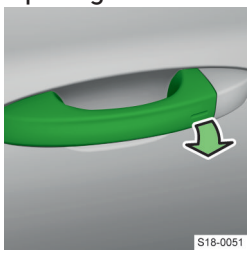
ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

Doors, windows and boot lid

Doors

Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

Opening from the inside



› Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

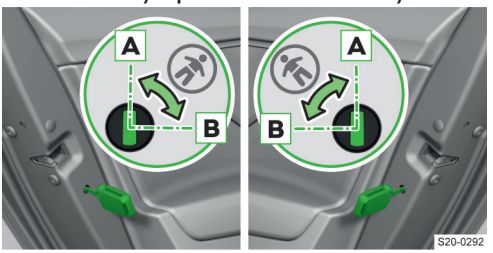
› Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

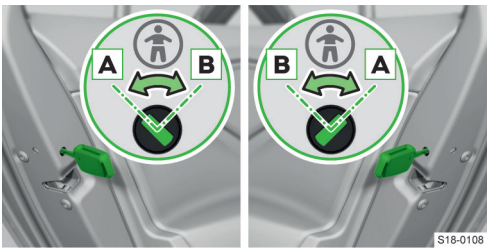
Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Mechanically operated child safety lock



Version 1



Version 2

› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock switched off

B Child lock switched on

Protective door strip

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the strip, the door and the body!

› Do not open the door too hastily or abruptly.

› Do not hold the door on the strip when opening and closing, as the strip must be able to move in and out freely.

› If the strip prevents the door from closing freely, do not close the door forcefully! Remove the strip, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Usage

Depending on the trim level, the doors can each be equipped with a protective strip. This moves out

when opening the door and protects the central area of the door edge from damage.

When the door closes the protective strip retracts.

Self-help

Replacing the damaged strip

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Be careful when handling the strip.



› Remove the strip from the door.

ⓘ NOTICE

› If any part of the strip remains in the door, seek the help of a specialist garage.



› Insert a new strip in the grooves.

› Press in the strip.

ⓘ A new strip can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Window – with manual operation

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.



› Turn the crank in the appropriate direction.

Window – with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is interrupted and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the glass being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

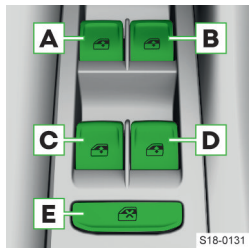
The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limiter.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending upon vehicle equipment:

- **A** Front left window
- **B** Front right window
- **C** Rear left window
- **D** Rear right window
- **E** Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

› Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Pressing the button again will stop the opening process.

Closing

› To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. By pressing the button again, the closing process is stopped.

After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Open all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

Close all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

› For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > > > Menu item for window operation

Or:

MENU > > > > Menu item for window operation

Troubleshooting

The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window operation does not work after disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery

› Enable window operation *» page 34, Activation after disconnecting 12V car battery*.

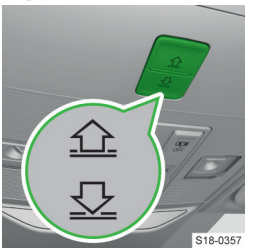
Activation after disconnecting 12V car battery

Activate automatic window operation

› Turn on the ignition.
› Pull out the corresponding button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Again pull out and hold the corresponding button for 1 s.

Sun visors – with electrical operation

Operation



Closing
Opening

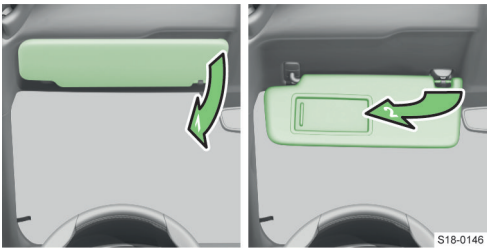
› Press or hold the button to **move** the roller blind.
› Press or release the button to **stop** the roller blind from moving.

Activation after disconnecting 12V car battery

› Turn on the ignition.
› Hold the button. The sunshade will open and close again.
› Release the button.

Sun visors

Folding up and folding down



1 Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen

2 Swivel the visor towards the door

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Boot lid – with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate of vehicles with an extended rear window.

Operation

Unlocking



› To unlock the lid, press the button.

If no door is opened within 120 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

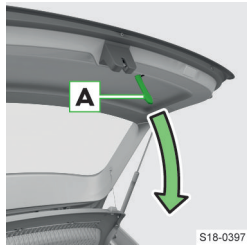
Opening



› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Hold the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid – with electrical control

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the tailgate when there is nobody or no objects in the swivel area.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.

› Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check that there are no objects within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the transported objects.

› If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate of vehicles with an extended rear window.

Operation

Handle in the tailgate



› Press the handle to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Button in the tailgate



› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

Button in the door



› To open the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate starts to open.

› To close the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate is fully closed.

› To stop the movement of the tailgate, pull or release the button.

Button on the key



› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to lock exists only on vehicles with a keyless locking system. The key must not be in the vehicle and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the tailgate.

ⓘ The tailgate can also be closed by pulling it briefly downwards.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Settings

Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it

It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

› Stop the tailgate in the desired position.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Re-adjusting the top starting position of the tailgate

› Carefully raise the tailgate manually to the limit.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal

› There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

› Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

› Mechanically unlock the flap » page 36.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal

› Close the tailgate manually.

ⓘ NOTICE

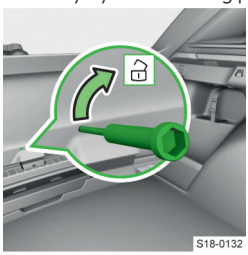
› Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

ⓘ When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

Unlocking the boot lid

Release

If the boot lid does not open, it can be unlocked manually by the following procedure.



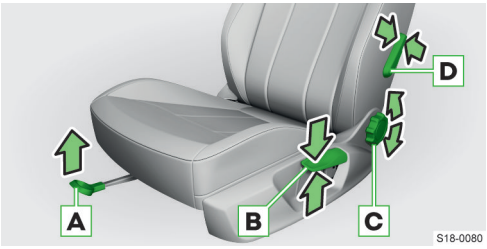
› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.

› Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirror

Front seat – with manual operation

Controls on the seat



A Adjust in a longitudinal direction
After releasing the control lever the latch must engage audibly.

B Adjusting the height

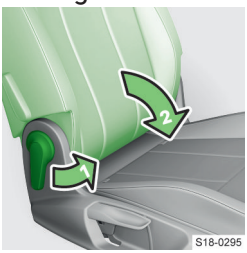
C Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment

D Adjusting the lumbar support Set the extent of the curvature

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Folding passenger seat backrest

Folding down



› Pull on the operating lever.
› Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

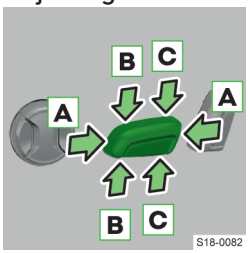
Folding back up

› Pull on the operating lever.
› Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Front seat – with electrical operation

Controls on the seat

Adjusting the seat

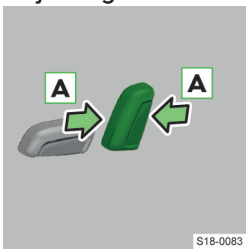


A Adjust in a longitudinal direction

B Adjust the inclination

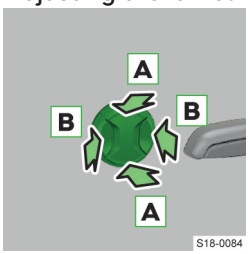
C Adjusting the height

Adjusting the seat back



A Adjust the inclination

Adjusting the lumbar support



A Set the position of the curvature

B Set the extent of the curvature

Rear seats

Folding down the seat backs

Before folding down

› Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.

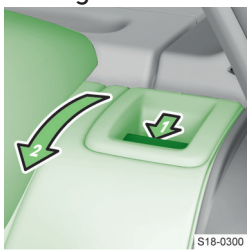
› Adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded-down seat backrests.
› Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts!

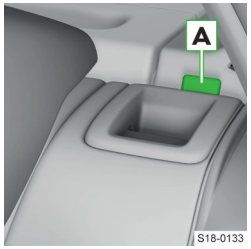
› The seat belts must not be fastened when handling the backrests.

Folding down



› Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

Folding back up



› Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
› Fold the seat backrest back up.

The release handle must audibly click into place.

› Check that the seat backrest has locked in place. The pin A must not be visible.

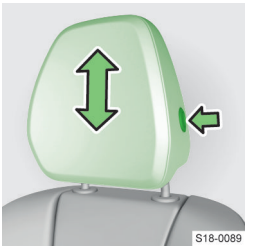
Park position of rear seat belts



Headrests

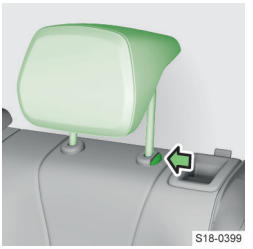
HeadrestsAdjusting the height

Front headrests



› Hold the safety button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

Rear headrests

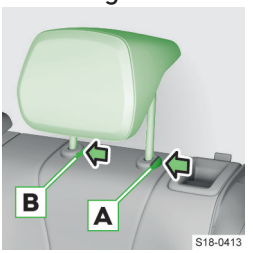


› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing



› Partially fold the respective seat back forwards.
› Move the headrest up to the stop.
› Press safety buttons A and B at the same time and remove the support.

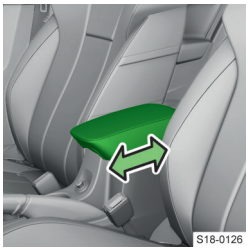
Inserting

› Insert the headrest into the seat backrest.

The safety button must click into place.

Front armrest

Settings



› Move the backrest to the desired position.

Rear armrest

Settings

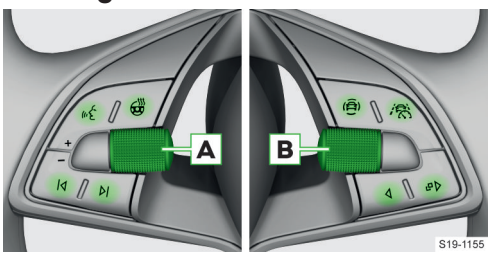


› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multi-function steering wheel



- Switch voice control on/off
- Steering wheel heating *» page 62*
- A **Turn** – adjust the volume
  Press – switch the sound on/off
- Switch to the next track/station played
- Switch to the previous track/station played
- Displaying the assist systems menu
- Switching between Travel Assist and Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) *» page 151*
- B Depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Controlling the analogue instrument cluster *» page 63*
  - › Controlling the digital instrument cluster *» page 65*
- Depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Controlling the analogue instrument cluster *» page 63*
  - › Controlling the digital instrument cluster *» page 65*
- Depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Controlling the analogue instrument cluster *» page 63*
  - › Controlling the digital instrument cluster *» page 65*

Setting the steering wheel position

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Swing the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering faulty

illuminates – total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.

› If the indicator light does not go out, do not continue. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates - partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light ! If the warning light does not go out, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock faulty

! flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

› Stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

! flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked

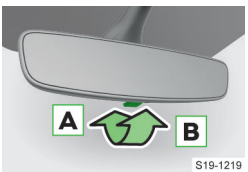
! flashes
Message concerning the required steering wheel movement

› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
› If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Interior rear-view mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror is not darkened
B Mirror darkens

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

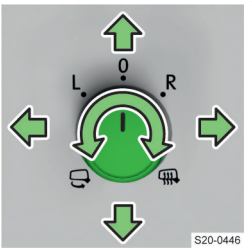
⚠ CAUTION
Risk of an accident!
A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.
› Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Wing mirror

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the rotary knob



L Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switch off operation
R Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
Fold mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different position of the rotary knob)
Heat the mirror with the engine running (select a different position of the rotary knob to switch off the heating)

Adjusting the mirror surface

› Select position **L** or **R**.
› Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Folding electrically folding mirrors automatically

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.
› Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance from vehicles behind.

! NOTICE
Danger of mirror damage!
› If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out by external influences, e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring, fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding sound.

Settings

Automatic folding of the exterior mirrors is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Electrical operation of the mirror surfaces disturbed

› Press lightly on the edge of the mirror surface with your fingers to adjust it.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns!

› Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Usage

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.
- If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Functionality

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock, for example, when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

- If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety of the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

🛈 Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners.

The reversible belt tensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Depending on the type of display, the display can be as follows:

Lights up or flashes – a front or rear seat belt is not fastened

lights up – rear seat not occupied

Flashes – a rear seat belt is not fastened

lights up or flashes– a rear seat belt is not fastened

lights up – a rear seat belt is not fastened

lights up – a rear seat belt is fastened.

lights up – a rear seat belt is fastened.

lights up – a rear seat belt is fastened.

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



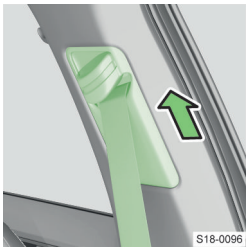
- Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
- Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
- Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

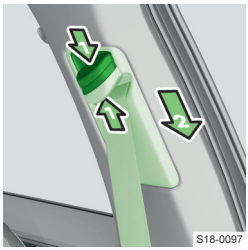


- Grasp the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
- Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings



- Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



- Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.
- After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



- Hold the strap in the middle and pull smoothly.
- Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
- Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.
- If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
- If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

To install and use the child seat, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's manual.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported in the back seats using the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Transport children in the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases. We also recommend you to use the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Only use child seats that comply with the regulations ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats in accordance with the standards ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

⚠ WARNING

- When installing the child seat in the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
- When fitting a child seat, avoid contact between the seat and the ceiling and the rear pillar of the vehicle body. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.
- If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above, the top edge of the headrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

- When installing the child seat, push it all the way up against the backrest so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the backrest.

› For a child seat with a support leg, adjust the height of the support leg so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the vehicle seat, and so that it is secured against movement.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

When using a child seat on the passenger seat, any country-specific regulations must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury to the child!

› Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:



A Sticker on the passenger sun visor

B Sticker on the central body pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat:

› It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with its back facing the direction of travel » page 48.

› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.

› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and a child seat that could be placed behind it.

› Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!

› For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.

› Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

› As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

Recommended child seats

We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles, are approved for these vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

For more information on child seats from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range, please contact your ŠKODA Partner or visit the ŠKODA website.

For optimal protection, it is recommended to use the child car seat of Group 2-3 with the backrest and the SecureGuard lap belt guide if the child car seat is equipped with it.

Classification by weight groups

Child seats are divided into groups in accordance with the ECE-R 44 regulation.

Category	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9–18 kg
2	15–25 kg
3	22–36 kg

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of applicability of child seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 regulation:

Child seats that use the system ISOFIX

Category	Size category of child seat [a]	Passenger seat		Rear seats	
		With activated front airbag [b]	Without activated front airbag [b]	Outer seats [b]	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	IL	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	IL	IL	X
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IUF	IL IUF	IL IUF	X
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IUF	IL	IL	X
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IUF	IL	IL	X

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

IL The seat is suitable for ISOFIX child seats with “Semi-Universal” approval.

IUF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

X The seat is not equipped with ISOFIX system eyelets.

i-Size

Passenger seat		Rear seats	
With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat
i-UF	i-U	i-U	X

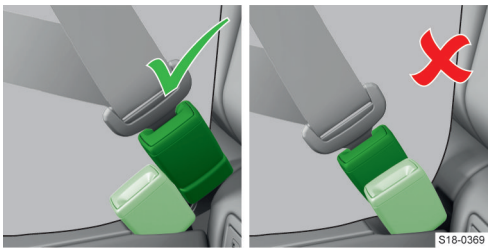
i-UF Seat is only suitable for forward-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

i-U The seat is suitable for forward-facing and rear-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

X Seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

When using a “Universal” child seat on the rear middle seat, you must move the seat belt buckle of the middle seat behind the seat belt buckle of the outer seat.



✓ Correct position – seat belt buckles are behind each other

✕ Incorrect position – seat belt buckles are next to each other

Category	Passenger seat		Rear seats	
	With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat [a]
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U [b]	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U [b]	U	U
1 (9–18 kg)	UF	U	U	U
2 (15–25 kg)	UF	U	U	U
3 (22–36 kg)	UF	U	U	U

[a] It is not permitted to install a child car seat with a support leg on the rear centre seat.

[b] Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.

U The seat is suitable for child seats in the “Universal” category permitted for use in this weight category.

UF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the “Universal” category permitted for use in this weight group.

X The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

Follow the instructions and notes at the beginning of this chapter ***» page 43, What you should be mindful of***.

ISOFIX

⚠ WARNING

› Do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects to the mounting eyelets used to install the child seat with the ISOFIX System provided.

ⓘ A child seat that uses the ISOFIX can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type.
Further information can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner or from a list of vehicles included with the child seat.

The ISOFIX system allows the child seat to be installed quickly and securely. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats, or on the passenger seat.



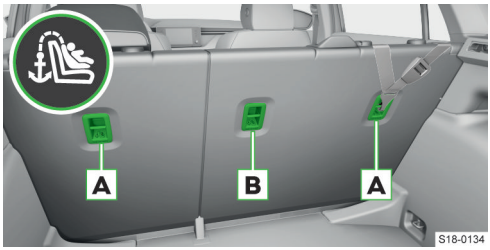
› Remove the protective caps before fitting the child seat.

TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

› Child seats that use the TOP TETHER system should only be used on those seats that are fitted with holding eyelets bearing the TOP TETHER symbol.
› Only attach one fastening strap on the child seat to the holding eyelet in the TOP TETHER system.
› When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object must be attached to the TOP TETHER system holding eyelet.

The attached TOP TETHER system strap restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.



Mounting eyelets on the rear seats



Mounting eyelets on the passenger seat

The TOP TETHER belt mounting eyelets are located on outer rear seats A, or also on the middle rear seat B or the passenger seat.

Airbags

Usage

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

What you should be mindful of

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » *page 48, Operation*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.
- No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » *page 47*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the front airbags!

- Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!

- Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.
- Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by ŠKODA.
- Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

ⓘ ŠKODA AUTO recommends seat covers from the product range of ŠKODA original accessories.

Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

ⓘ As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

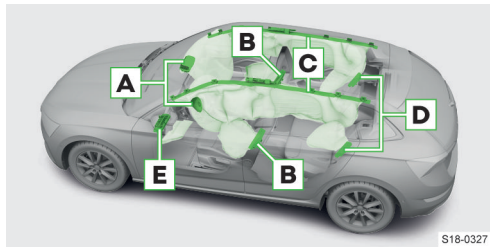
In the following situations, **no** airbags are deployed:

- Minor frontal and side collisions
- Rear-end collision
- Vehicle rollover

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

Airbag overview

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering **AIRBAG**.



A Front airbags
B Side airbags - front
C Head airbags
D Side airbags - rear
E Driver's knee airbag

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition must be switched on for airbag deployment.

Troubleshooting

Airbag system faulty

illuminates
Message regarding an airbag fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Key switch for the front passenger airbag

Usage

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is provided for the following cases, for example:

› A rear-facing child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat.
› The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.
› The minimum distance to the control panel cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

› Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

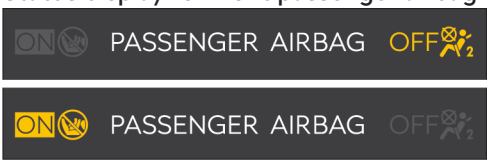
⚠ WARNING

Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!

› After switching off the passenger airbag with the key bit, do not leave the key bit inserted in the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the Key assignment to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag.

Functionality

Status display for front passenger airbag



Indicator lights in the headliner

› After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
› If the system is OK, both of the indicator lights go out.
› One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch:

OFF Illuminates – front passenger airbag switched off

ON Illuminates 65 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched on

Operation

Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag

› Completely fold out the key bit.

Switch front passenger front airbag on/off



› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the passenger door.
› Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
› To **Switch off**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **OFF**.
› To **Switch on**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **ON**.
› Remove the key bit from the slot.
› Close the passenger door.
› Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

⚠ WARNING

When the passenger airbag is switched off, the head airbag on the passenger side is also switched off at the same time.

Troubleshooting

Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty

ON flashes together with OFF
The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

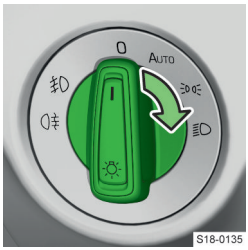
When no light is switched on

The symbol ☼ in the light switch may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.

☼ illuminates

› Switch on the light.

Operation



0 All lights except daytime running lights off

AUTO Switching low beam on/off automatically » page 50

Parking lights

Low beam

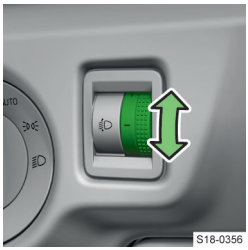
ⓘ The light switch's default position should be **AUTO**.

Settings

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions

› Select the position of the control according to the vehicle's current load status.



– Front seats occupied, boot empty

1 All seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot loaded

3 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

In dynamic cornering light, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can cause insufficient vehicle lighting or can dazzle other road users.

› Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Adjust headlights for driving in right / left-hand traffic

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > ⚙ > ☼

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

› Activate the travel mode function.

Troubleshooting

Light bulb or LED bulb is defective

☼ or ☼ ⚠ illuminates

Information appears in the display regarding the defective lights.

› Replace the defective bulb.

› In case of a defective LED bulb, contact a specialist garage for help.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Inside the headlights, moisture may occur. This is not a defect.

Malfunction of the automatic headlight circuit

› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened

Headlight defective.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driving lights defective

If a message regarding the failed driving lights is displayed, the light will work in emergency mode.

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Daylight running lights

Functionality

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Operating conditions

✓ The lights switch is in position **0**, **AUTO** or .

Automatic driving lights function

Functionality

Switching low beam on automatically in low-light

The low beam is automatically switched on or off depending on the lighting conditions.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

The low beam is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the symbol in the light switch.

Operating conditions

Switching low beam on/off automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
✓ The function is activated.
✓ The windscreen wipers are switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

Settings

The automatic driving lights functions are set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

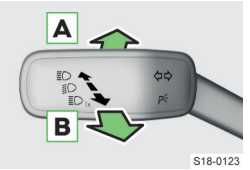
Or:

MENU > > >

High beam and headlight flasher

Operation

The high beam works when the low beam is on.



A Switch on high beam
B Switch off main beam / switch on headlight flasher

When the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on, the indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster .

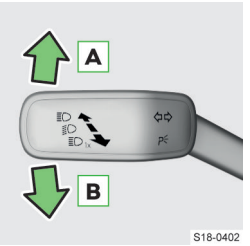
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

› Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal

Operation



A Switching on the turn signal light on the right – a light flashes in the instrument cluster
B Switching on the turn signal light on the left – a light flashes in the instrument cluster

Turn signal - convenience signalling

Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Settings

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster - turn signal light on the right defective

› Check the turn signal light on the right.

flashes faster - turn signal light on the left defective

› Check the turn signal light on the left.

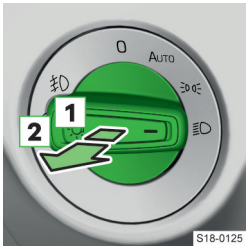
Trailer flashing light failed

does not flash when the trailer is hitched - trailer turn signal light defective

› Check the trailer lighting.

Fog light

Operation



Positions for pulling out the light switch:

1 Fog lights – when switched on, signal illuminates in the instrument cluster

2 Rear fog light – when switched on, signal illuminates in the instrument cluster

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or .
› Pull the light switch to the appropriate position.

The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights function

Operation

› Press the button to switch on or off in the middle part of the control panel.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically when starting off or accelerating.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking light function

Usage

Double-sided parking light

The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the sidelights.

One-sided parking light

The one-sided parking light allows one side of the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the corresponding sidelights.

Operation

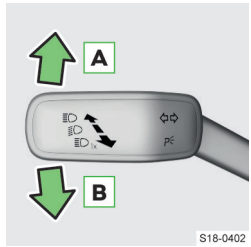
Double-sided parking light

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn the light switch to position .
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

The light may switch off automatically if the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12 volt vehicle battery may be discharged.

One-sided parking light



A Switch on the sidelights on the right

B Switch on the sidelights on the left

› Switch off the ignition.
› Move the lever to the appropriate position.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

CORNER function

Functionality

The CORNER function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the vicinity of the vehicle front in the direction of travel.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are steered sharply.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 40 km/h.

Adaptive functions of the headlights

Usage

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The dynamic cornering lights ensure the best possible illumination of the road, depending on the respective driving situation.

The **Dynamic cornering light** function ensures the best possible illumination of the curve area.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Settings

Activate / deactivate the dynamic cornering lights function

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

› Activate or deactivate the function *Dynamic cornering light* .

Function COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME

Functionality

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Visibility has worsened.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Settings

The function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

High-beam assist system Light Assist

Functionality

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

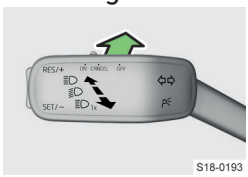
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



S18-0193

› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

It lights up in the instrument cluster from the isolation box.

Switching off

› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

› The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.

› The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning.

The system function can be restricted in unfavorable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

Video – Main-beam control (Light Assist)

Light Assist - activation and deactivation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-auto-light-assist

Replace light bulbs

What you should be mindful of

The replacement of the following bulbs is possible. Have the remaining light sources replaced by a specialist garage.

The new bulb must conform to the specification of the original light bulb. The name of the bulb is marked on the bulb socket.

After changing a bulb in the high beam or in the front fog light, have the headlights adjusted by a specialist garage.

⚠ CAUTION

Halogen lamps are pressurised and can burst during replacement!

› Wear gloves and safety goggles.

ⓘ NOTICE

Contamination of the halogen lamp reduces the life of the lamp!

› Do not touch the glass of the light bulb with your bare fingers.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of headlight damage due to the ingress of water and dirt!

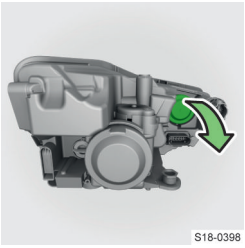
› Always fit the protective cap on the headlight correctly after changing a bulb.

Conditions for changing a bulb

✓ Ignition off

✓ Light switched off

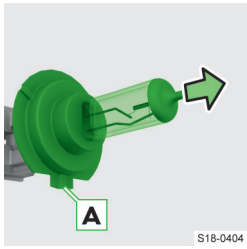
Main beam



› Remove the protective cap from the headlight.



› Press the socket with the light bulb upwards and remove it.



› Change the bulb in the socket.

› Insert the base with the new light bulb into the headlight so that the fixing lug A is pointing down.

› Reinstall the protective cap on the headlight.

Front turn signal

› Adjust the front wheels so that the cover cap in the wheel arch is accessible.



Symbols on the cover cap:

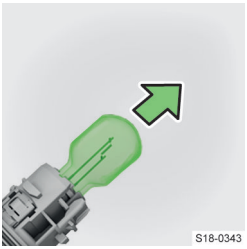
- Secure position
- Removal/insertion position

› Turn the cover cap with the corresponding symbol until it is facing the ▼ marking on the wheel arch.

› Remove the cover cap.



› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.

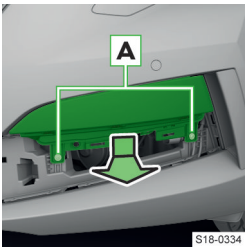


› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Insert the socket with the light bulb into the headlight and turn it clockwise ↻ to secure.
› Insert the cover cap into the wheel arch and turn it clockwise ↻ to secure.

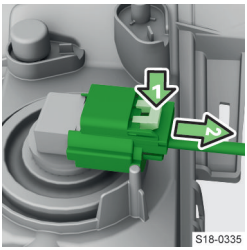
Fog lights



› Remove the cover with the bracket from the tool kit and remove it towards the outside of the bumper.



› Unscrew **screws** A.
› Remove the light downwards and forwards.

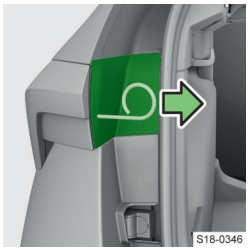


› Release the connector and remove it from the bulb.

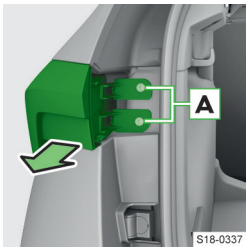


› Turn the light bulb and take it out.
› Push the new light bulb into the light so that the guide lugs on the light bulb and the associated openings in the light are in alignment.
› Turn the bulb clockwise ↻ to secure.
› Attach the connector to the bulb, ensuring it clicks into place.
› Reinstall the lamp and screw it on.
› First insert the cover in the outer bumper area.
› Press the cover in towards the centre of the bumper until it clicks into place.

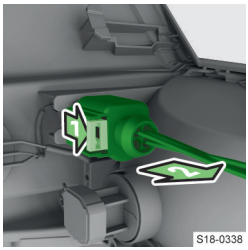
Rear turn signal



› Remove the cover with the bracket from the tool kit.



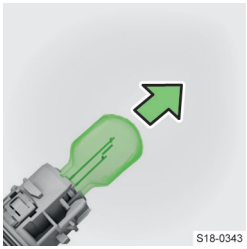
› Unscrew the screws A and remove the lamp.



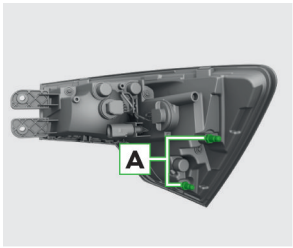
› Press the lock mechanisms on the connector and remove the connector.

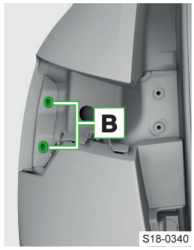


› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.



› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Push the base with the new light bulb into the luminaire so that the guide lugs on the base and the associated openings in the luminaire are flush.
› Turn the socket clockwise ↻ to secure.
› Insert the connector into the light until it clicks into place.





› Insert the lamp with the cones A into the openings B in the body.

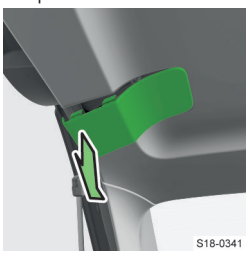
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system!

› Make sure that the lines between the lamp and the body are not pinched when the lamp is inserted.
› Screw on the lamp.
› Fit the cover of the light, ensuring it clicks into place.

Reversing light

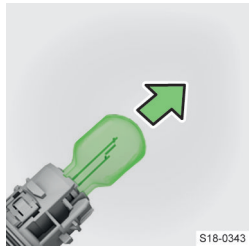
› Open the boot lid.



› Release and remove the cover cap in the boot lid.



› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.



› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Push the base with the new light bulb into the luminaire so that the guide lugs on the base and the associated openings in the luminaire are flush.
› Turn the socket clockwise ↻ to secure.
› Insert the cover cap until it clicks into place.

Interior lighting

Operation

Automatic activation

The lighting is activated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is unlocked
› One of the doors is open
› The ignition key is removed (vehicle without starter button)

Automatic deactivation

The lighting is deactivated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked
› The ignition is switched on
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed

Lighting operation

Switch centre position	Automatic activation and deactivation
	Front and rear lights on/off
OFF	Deactivating automatic switch-on
	Left reading light
	Right reading light

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights are switched off automatically after 10 minutes.

Automatic switching the footwell lighting on/off

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

It also switches on automatically when the doors are opened, e.g. when getting in or out of the vehicle.

Settings

The brightness level of the switching and instrument lighting as well as brightness level of the footwell lighting is set in the Infotainment in the following menu when the low beam or parking light is switched on:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

Interior ambient light

Usage

The ambient lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere in the vehicle interior.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door.

Settings

The background lighting is set in the following Infotainment system menu:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

Windscreen wipers and washers

Operating conditions

Operating conditions for windscreen wipers

- ✓ Engine compartment flap closed
- ✓ Boot lid closed
- ✓ Ignition on

Operating conditions for the windscreen washer system

- ✓ Engine compartment flap closed
- ✓ Boot lid closed

Operation

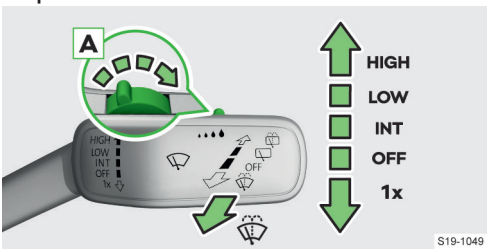
⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.

› Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

Wipe and wash the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- › Intermittent wiping
- › Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Tip-wiping (spring-loaded position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the position **INT**

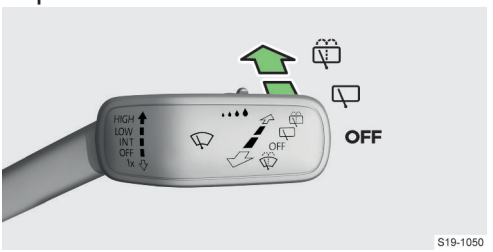
Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

The windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen are automatically heated together with the exterior mirrors.

Clean headlights

When the headlights are switched on, they are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. Setting the spray interval can be carried out by a specialist garage.

Wipe and wash the rear window



Spring-loaded position:
- › Washing and wiping the windscreen
- › Cleaning the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Automatic rear window wiping function

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain are activated or deactivated as follows:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the weather conditions.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!

› When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headlights!

› Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

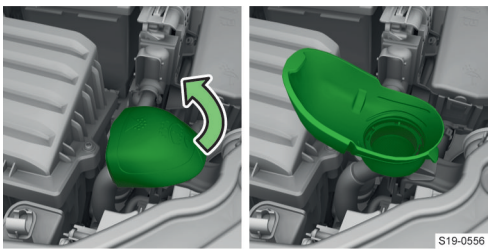
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to engine compartment components!

› Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the engine compartment » page 15.

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 4 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system.



Funnel-shaped sealing cap of the tank

› Open the engine compartment lid » page 159.

› Gently open the top of the sealing cap.

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

› Close the sealing cap of the tank.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

For folding down the windscreen wiper from the screen you must first adjust the wiper arms to the folded position.

ⓘ NOTICE

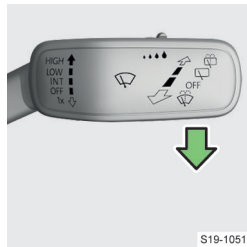
Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!

› Close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.

› Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position

› Switch the ignition on and off again.



› Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

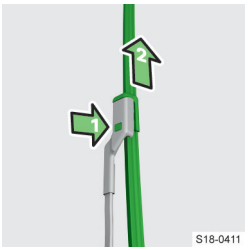
Replace the windscreen wiper blade

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

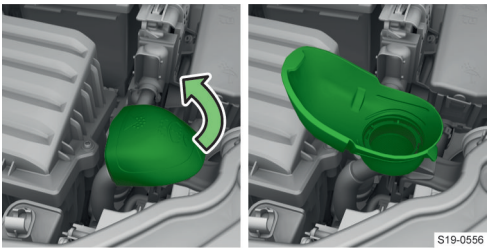
› Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.

› Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



› Press the catch and remove the wiper blade.
› Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

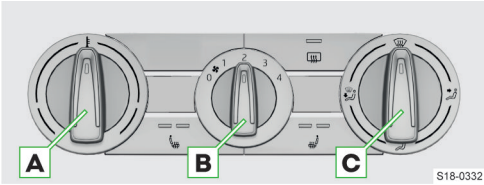
Cap for refilling the windscreen washer fluid



Heating and air conditioning system

Heating

Operation



A Set the temperature

B Set the blower speed

C Set the direction of the air outlet

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 61, Operation

Switch the seat heating on/off » page 62, Operation

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

› Always keep the fan on.

Manual air conditioning

What you should be mindful of

› It is recommend to keep the interior temperature no more than 5 °C lower than the outdoor temperature.

› It is recommended to switch the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.

› It is recommended to have the air conditioner disinfected once a year.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

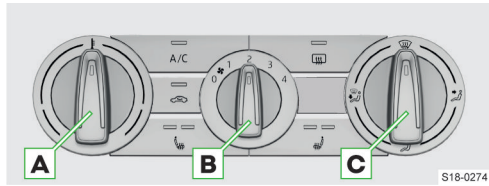
✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C

✓ Running engine

✓ Fan switched on

The indicator light in the button **A/C** can light up even if not all conditions for switching on the cooling system are met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

Operation



A Setting the temperature

B Setting the fan speed

C Setting the direction of the air outlet

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 61, Operation

Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

Switching the seat heating on/off » page 62, Operation

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Automatic activation of the cooling system

Automatic activation of the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up. It turns on when the following conditions are met:

✓ The fan is on.

✓ The air distribution setting **is** in the position.

In this case, air recirculation is switched off.

Or:

✓ The fan is on.
✓ The air distribution setting **is not** in the position.
✓ Recirculated air mode is on.

Recirculated air mode

Recirculated air mode prevents contaminated outside air entering the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculated air mode can increase the cooling effect.

Recirculated air mode is automatically switched on when the following conditions are met::

✓ The cooling is on.
✓ The fan is on.
✓ The temperature control is set to the minimum temperature.
✓ The air distribution setting is not in the position.

ⓘ During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

› We recommend keeping the interior temperature no more than 5 ° C lower than the outdoor temperature.
› We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
› Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

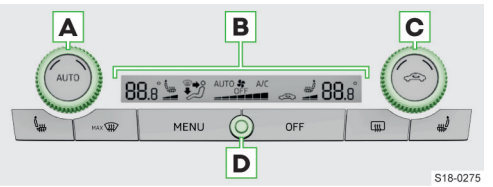
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C
✓ Running engine
✓ Fan switched on

Operation



A Set the temperature for the left side

B Climatronic display

C Set the temperature for the right side

D Interior temperature sensor

AUTO **Press** - Switch on automatic mode

This function keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Hold - Maintain the interior temperature in accordance with the temperature setting for the driver side (SYNC function)

Switch recirculated air mode on/off

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Switch the seat heating on/off » page 62, Operation

MAX Switch the windscreen ventilation/defrosting mode on/off

MENU Operate Climatronic in the Infotainment system

OFF Switch Climatronic on / off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 61, Operation

ⓘ After pressing the **A/C** button, the indicator light in the button illuminates, even if the conditions for switching on the cooling system are not met. The

cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

With a temperature setting outside of the number range, one of the following icons will be displayed in the Climatronic display:

LO Maximum cooling power
HI Maximum heating power

ⓘ During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

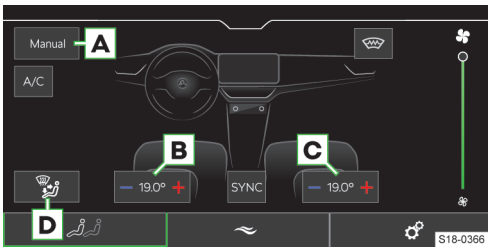
Settings

Display the settings menu

› Tap the **MENU** button on the Climatronic.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ❄ in the Infotainment screen.



A Select Climatronic mode

B Set the temperature for the left side

C Set the temperature for the right side

D Set the direction of the air outlet in manual mode

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off
When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.
Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 61, Operation

According to the selected Climatronic mode:
› Manual mode - Set the blower speed
› Automatic mode - Set the operating power

SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

Air Care
The function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.
The air purification process is displayed in the Infotainment.
For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.
› To turn on/off, tap . *Active* .

Further Climatronic settings

› To make further settings, press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic >, tap on in the Infotainment screen.

› *Automatic windscreen heating* - Switch on/off the automatic windscreen heating

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switch on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Heated windscreen

Usage

Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

Requirements

✓ Running engine
✓ Outside temperature approximately below 35 °C

Operation

Heated rear window

› Using the button on the operating part of the air conditioning.

Heated windscreen

› Press the key **MENU** on the Climatronic panel > , tap in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ❄ > in the Infotainment screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after some time.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within about 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Settings

Automatic heated windscreen

The heated windscreen switches on automatically if the windscreen mists up.

› Press the button MENU on the Climatronic control panel >, tap in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap on MENU > > in the Infotainment screen.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes

The heating does not work as the battery charging level of the 12 volt vehicle battery is too low.

Seat heating

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

› Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

› Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.

› Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
  › The seat is not occupied.
  › There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  › There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Requirements

✓ Running engine

Operation

› Press the or button on the Climatronic to switch on the front seat heating.

› Press the or button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

The heat output is determined by the number of illuminated indicator lights that are shown in the button or in the Climatronic display.

If the heating is switched on with maximum heat output, the heating power is automatically lowered after 10 minutes.

Heated steering wheel

Requirements

✓ Running engine

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

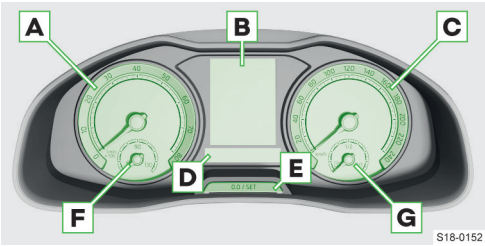
🛈 By holding down the button on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off or switched on at the level of the heating output that was set before the heating was switched off.

Driver information system

Analogue instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of instrument cluster



- **A** Tachometer with indicator lights
- **B** Display
- **C** Speedometer with indicator lights
- **D** Bar with indicator lights
- **E** Multifunction button:
  - › Setting the time
  - › Reset odometer (trip)
  - › Show distance and days until next service appointment
- **F** Depending on equipment fitted
  - › Coolant temperature gauge
  - › Gas gauge
- **G** Fuel gauge

⚠ NOTICE

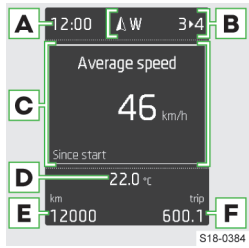
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never empty the fuel tank completely!**

In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Display overview

The following information is displayed in the overview:



- **A** Time
- **B** Selected gear/gear recommendation
  Also included depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Compass direction display
  - › Automatic gearbox selector lever positions
- **C** Menu, indicator lights and information
- **D** Outside temperature
  ❄ - low outside temperature
- **E** Total distance travelled
- **F** trip – Distance travelled after resetting the memory

Overview of the main menu items on the display

- › Driving data » *page 66, Overview*
- › Assist systems - Activate/deactivate assist systems
- › Navigation - e.g. Display driving recommendations, compass, list of destination
- › Audio - Using radio and media
- › Telephone - Call list, accept or reject an incoming call
- › Vehicle - Vehicle condition » *page 67, Display*.

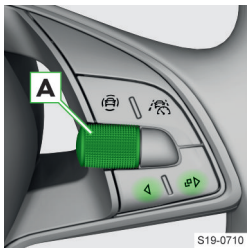
Operation

Operation via the control lever



- **A** **Press** - Switch between menu items/ set values
  Hold - Show main menu
- **B** **Press** - Confirm the menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



A **Turn** - Switch between menu items/ set values

Press - Confirm the menu item

◁ **Press** - Return to the menu one level higher

Hold - Show main menu

Press - Show previous menu (if one has been selected) / Show telephone menu

Settings

Setting the language

The language is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Resetting the odometer

0.0/SET

› Briefly press the button in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time

0.0/SET

› Press and hold the button in the instrument cluster until the menu item *Time* is displayed.

› Release the button, the display shows the hour setting.

› Press the button repeatedly to set the hours.

› Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the minute setting.

› Press the key repeatedly to set the minutes.

› Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the initial setting.

The time is also set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness of the instrument lighting is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

When low beam is switched on, the brightness of the instruments lighting can be adjusted in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > ⚙ > ☼

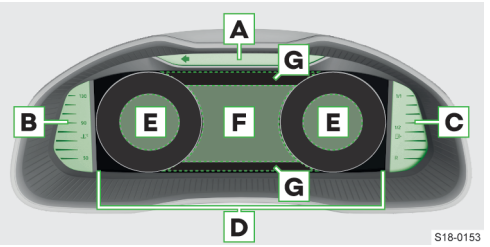
Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

Digital instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of instrument cluster



A Bar with indicator lights

B Coolant temperature gauge

C Fuel gauge

D Display

E Additional information

F Central display area

G Display area with selected information:

› Gear engaged

› Selector lever positions of the automatic transmission (depending on the vehicle equipment)

› Time

› Warning lights

› Information from the assistance systems

› Distance travelled

› Outside temperature

❄ - low outside temperature

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never empty the fuel tank completely!**

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Overview of the main menu items

› Driving data » *page 66, Overview*

› Assist systems - Activate/deactivate assist systems

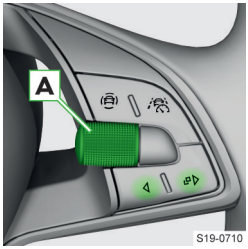
› Navigation - e.g. Display driving recommendations, compass, list of destination

› Audio - Using radio and media

› Telephone - Call list, accept or reject an incoming call

› Vehicle - Vehicle condition » *page 67, Display*.

Operation



A **Rotating** – switching between menu items / setting values / manual map rescaling
Pressing – confirming the menu item
Rotating and pressing – enabling automatic map rescaling

◁ **Press** – return to the menu one level higher
Holding – displaying the main menu

⇳ **Press** – switch the display variant
Hold – display the presets menu with additional information

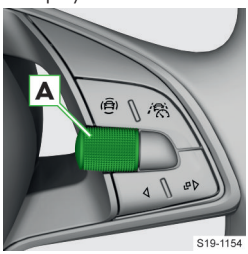
Settings

Setting the language

You can set the language in the **MENU** > ⚙ Infotainment system menu.

Resetting the odometer in the instrument cluster

› Select *Trip* from the menu on the instrument cluster display.



A **Rotating** – selection of data
Pressing – confirming the data
Holding – resetting the odometer

Setting the time

You can also set the time in the **MENU** > ⚙ Infotainment system menu.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

When low beam is switched on, the brightness of the instrument lighting can be adjusted in the following Infotainment system menu:

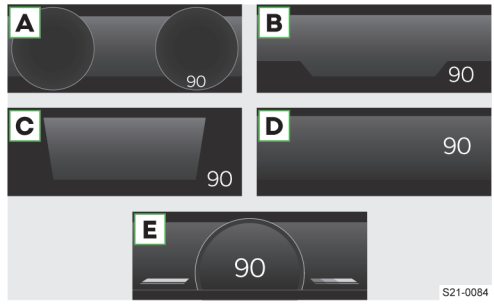
CAR > ⚙ > ☼

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

Selecting and setting the display variant

› Press the ⇳ button on the multi-function steering wheel to switch the display variant.
› Hold down the ⇳ button on the multi-function steering wheel to make a selection.
› Select and confirm the display variant.
› Select and confirm one of the following display options.



A Classic
B Advanced
C Modern
D Basic
E Sport (depending on vehicle equipment)

Selecting the additional information display

› Hold the ⇳ button on the multi-function steering wheel.
› Select and confirm one of the following preferences (the range of preferences depends on the type of infotainment system):
  › **Auto** – information based on the selected driving mode
  › **Classic**– information on the gear engaged and the current speed
  › Setting a preset

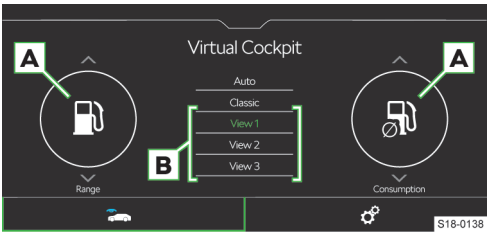
Setting a preset to display additional information

The preset for displaying additional information can be set from the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > 🚘 > item for virtual cockpit

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚘 > item for virtual cockpit



› Select the required additional information in A areas.

› To save, hold down the desired preset button in B area (the range of presets depends on the type of the Infotainment system).

Driving data

Overview

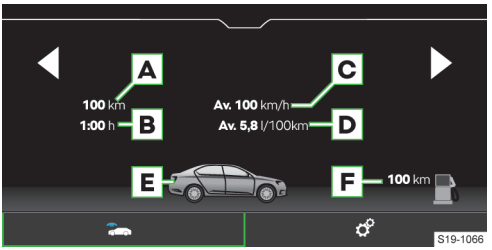
The driving data display works with the ignition switched on.

In the instrument cluster display

Depending on the equipment, the display of the instrument cluster shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

For natural gas vehicles, the display of the instrument cluster shows the natural gas quality in percent from 70% to 100%. The higher the value, the lower the consumption of natural gas.

In Infotainment



A Distance travelled

B Driving time

C Average speed

D Average fuel consumption

E Graphic display of fuel levels

Graphical fuel gauge - If the expected range is less than 300 km, the vehicle slowly approaches the symbol ⛽

F Range

Range (for natural gas vehicles, the range with petrol, CNG and the sum of the ranges with both fuel types are displayed separately).

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

Since start

› Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

› The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

Since refuel

› Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

Operation

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the operating lever

› Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.

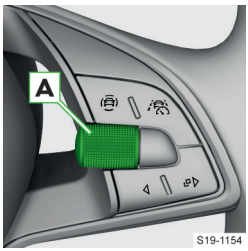


A **Press**: Press - Select information/Set values

B **Press**: Confirm information

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel

› Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



A **Turn**: Press - Select information/Set values

Press: Confirm information

Displaying driving data in the infotainment system

The driving data is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > 🚗 > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > Menu item for the driving data

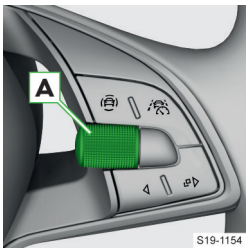
Select and reset the memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster using the control lever



› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press button A repeatedly.

› To **reset** the memory, press and hold button A.

Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it



› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press control wheel A repeatedly.

› To **reset**the memory, hold the dial A.

Selecting the memory in the infotainment system

To select the memory, use the functional areas ◄ ► in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the driving data

Resetting the memory in the infotainment system

The memory is reset in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Settings

Select driving data to be displayed

The driving data to be displayed is selected in the following Infotainment menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Setting units

The units are set in the following infotainment menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Speed limit warning

Usage

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Settings

Setting the speed limit

› Select *Warning at* or (depending on the display type) and confirm.

› **When the vehicle is stationary**, set the desired speed limit and confirm.

› **While driving**, drive at the desired speed and confirm it as the speed limit.

Resetting the speed limit

› Select *Warning at* or (depending on the display type) and confirm.

› To reset the speed limit, confirm the stored value.

If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the set limit is deactivated, but the set value remains stored.

Vehicle status

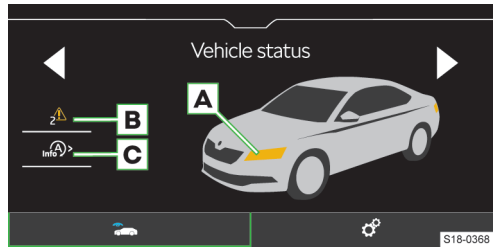
Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > > Menu item for the vehicle status

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the vehicle status



A Vehicle areas displayed in colour indicate associated warnings

B ✓ No notification

⚠ Warning messages regarding the vehicle condition and their quantity

C Display of information about the condition of START-STOP system

› Activation/deactivation of information regarding the messages of START-STOP system in another screen display

Functionality

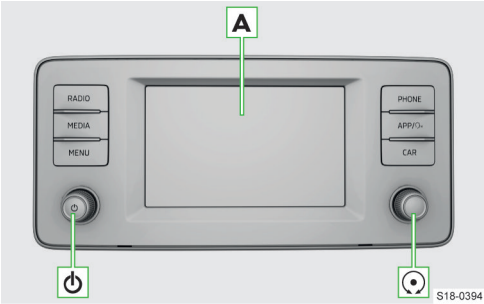
In the event of a system fault, messages regarding the fault in question are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Messages in relation to faults can also be displayed in the Infotainment.

The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights (Hazard) or (Warning) are displayed.

Infotainment Swing

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

⏻ Rotary control on the left
- **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- **Turn:** Volume setting

Rotary control on the right
- **Press:** Confirm menu item
- **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

PHONE **Phone** menu

APP/ **SmartLink** menu
- **Press:** Display menu
- **Hold:** Switch voice control for the SmartLink application on/off

CAR Information about vehicle settings

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

ŠKODA AUTO keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic setting

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > menu:

› Time and date
› Language
› Units
› Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

› Equaliser
› Volume ratio
› Individual Infotainment functions volume

The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

- › Volume adjustment of voice commands
- › Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
- › Speed-dependent volume
- › Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

› Space optimisation

› Audio profiles according to genre
› Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant
The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

› To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.
› For **manual display** tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration assistant*.

Set up menu MENU
The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Safely disconnecting the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device
To disconnect a USB device safely, proceed as follows:
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Safely remove USB*.
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update
We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

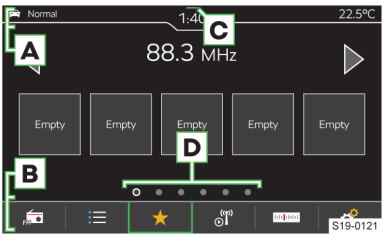
Determine system version
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

System update
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
› Follow the instructions on the screen.

ⓘ The information about the completed system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Display of the control centre
D Other pages of the menu

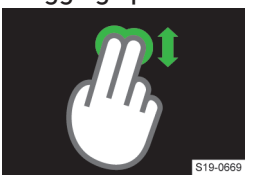
Operation

ⓘ NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



› Quickly review the list of phone contacts

Settings
The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Screen*:

› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation tones

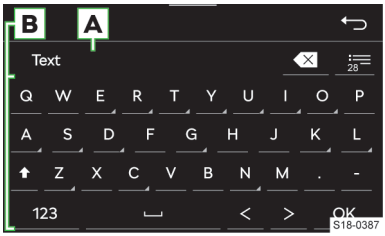
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



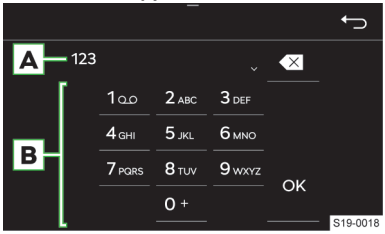
Keypad example

A Input line
› ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other

≔ Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces
› ⬆ Switch to lowercase/uppercase
› **АБВ/АБВ** Switch to the language keypad
› **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
› 🌐 Show additional keyboard languages
› ⎵ Insert spaces
› A↓ **Hold:** Show more character variants
› < Move cursor to the left
› > Move cursor to the right
› OK Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
› ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

› OK Confirm the entered characters

ⓘ If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ≔.

Displaying additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must first be set.

› Repeatedly tap 🌐 or the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

› Press and hold the character with the A↓ symbol.
› Select the desired symbol.

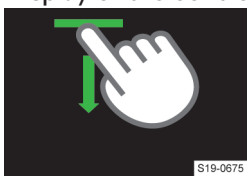
Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

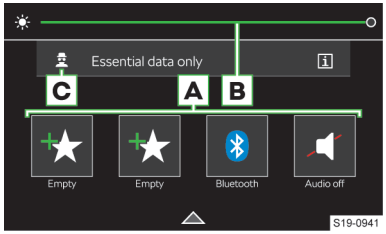
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Preferred functions

B Setting the instrument and key illumination

C Setting the personal data protection level

Settings

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the ★ icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, tap on the functional surface of the desired function.

› To **remove** the preferred feature, tap on 🗑.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ✕.

Radio

Overview

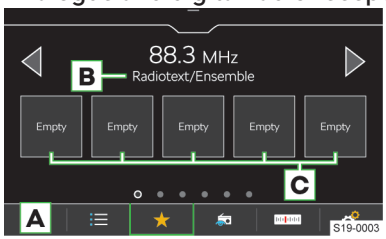
Display menu

› Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > 📻.

Analogue and digital radio reception



A Select frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text
DAB: Radio text: name of the station group

C Preset buttons for preferred stations

☰ List of available stations

★ Show favourites

📻 Show information about the station

Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)

⚙ Settings

ⓘ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

› Tap on ☰.

▶ Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB signal is not available

Filter the stations in the list according to the programme type, e.g. culture, music, sports, etc.
FM: with activated RDS function

↻ Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the program type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** press ⚙ > *Scan* or the right rotary control ⊙.

› To **end automatic play** press SCAN or the right rotary control ⊙.

Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› In the Radio main menu, tap .

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control.

Restriction

› Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

› The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Deleting favourites

› In the **Radio** menu, > tap *Clear memory*.
› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** presets for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Functional areas ◁ ▷

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ◁ ▷ functional surfaces in the **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Switching stations:*.
› Select the switching option.

Switching traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Traffic Programme (TP)*.

Switching traffic reception for DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu, switch on the > *Traffic Programme (TP)* menu item.
› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *DAB Traffic Programme (TP)* to switch it on/off.

Adding station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The Infotainment system offers the option to assign logos from images on an external source to the station presets.

For station logos, images in the jpg, png, bmp formats with a maximum resolution of 500x500pixels can be used.

› In **Radio** menu, tap > *Station logos*.
› Tap the desired preset key.
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find the desired logo and confirm.

Delete station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Station logos*.
› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Enabling/disabling automatic addition of the saved station logo to favourites

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic storage of station logos*.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The infotainment system provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose country.

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Radio text*.

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Automatic frequency change to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss on the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Regional RDS:*.
› Select one of the following menu items:
› *Fix* – when the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
› *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

ⓘ If signal is lost in the given region, the Infotainment system will automatically tune to another available region.

Sort stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Sort list of stations:*.
› Select the sorting of stations in alphabetical order or by group.

Switching RDS on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

› Traffic Programme (TP)
› Radio text
› RDS Regional
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo
› Sort stations in the list of available stations

Switch program type display on / off

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

If the function is switched on, additional information on the broadcast program type (PTY) is displayed in the list of available stations. The programs can be filtered based on this information.

Switching additional announcements of DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

Enabling/disabling automatic programme tracking of a DAB station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the DAB station being listened to is lost, the infotainment system automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB - DAB programme tracking*.

Turning automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the DAB station being listened to is lost, the infotainment system automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic DAB – FM switching*.

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Change to a similar station* .

Switching the Slideshow function on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB slideshow*.

Media

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.

› When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
› When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

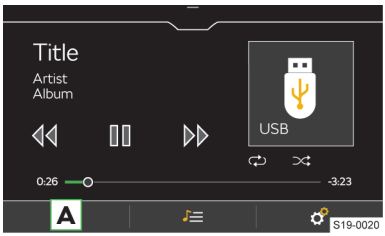
Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

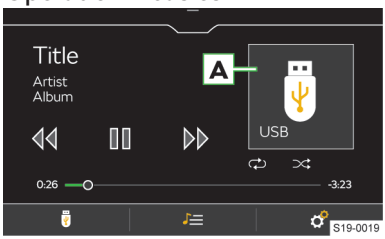
› Tap **MENU** > ♫.



A Selecting a source
Manage files / Multimedia database
Settings

Player controls

Operation – basics



A Album image/symbol for the connected source
Tapping: starting playback
Tapping: pause
Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track
Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning
Holding: fast rewinding within the track
Tapping: playing the next track
Holding: fast forwarding within the track

You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track
Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder
Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

› In the **Media** menu tap on ⚙ > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders.* .

Switch playback of online media from the Apple device on / off

› To **switching on / off** in the menu **media** ⚙ > tap *Include online media from the iPod device* .

Media in the Apple iCloud will included in the list of available media under the following conditions:

✓ The mobile device is not connected using Apple CarPlay.
✓ The mobile device is connected to the Apple iCloud.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!
To safely disconnect a USB device, proceed as follows:
› In the **Media** menu ⚙ > *Remove USB safely* .
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that support the USB Mass Storage protocol	
		MTP	Devices having an Android operating system, which support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

ⓘ The Apple-iAP1 protocol is not supported by Infotainment.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
FLAC	flac

Codec type	File extension
RIFF	wav
SBC	-

Files that are protected by DRM and iTunes® technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Mobile device management

Overview

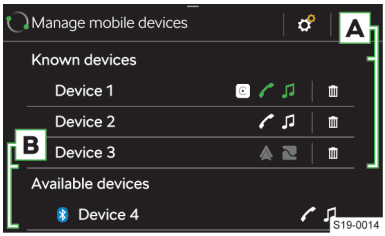
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Displaying mobile device management

› Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone* > .

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > > > *Mobile devices*.



A Connected / Previously connected devices

B Available devices

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®-"hands-free profile"

The device is connected via the Bluetooth®-"hands-free profile"

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile

The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee full Bluetooth® compatibility with infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version and the implementation of the Bluetooth® protocols on the part of the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Applications can be installed in external devices making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may

not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Information about ŠKODAapplications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* > 📱.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

The selected device can be connected via the most recently used Bluetooth® profile.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ✆.

ⓘ If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected phone
› **Tap:** View the list of previously connected phones

B Name of the telephone service provider

C Station buttons for preferred contacts

Change the main telephone with the additional telephone

Enter phone number

Contact list

Call lists

Switch on voice control of the connected phone

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Phone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦.

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

ⓘ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on 📇.

› To **find** details within the list, tap *Find*.

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦ > ⌾.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call
Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller
Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the audio from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **Telephone** menu and tap ⚙ > *Handsfree*.

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap 🔊.

Conference call

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Tap to answer a new incoming call.

› To **start** a conference call, tap 👥+.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily
The conference call continues in the background
Return to the held conference call
Switch the microphone off/on
End conference call
Show details of the conference call

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

End conversation with the conference call participant
Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

› **No telephone**– The telephone is connected as the main telephone.

› **One telephone**– The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

› **Two telephones**– Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on 📱 in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® device.

The name of the device can be found in the **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Name:* menu item.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non–paired phone – no phone is connected

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ⁄.
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non–paired phone – another phone is connected

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* > 📱.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

The phone will be connected as an additional phone.

Or:

› If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

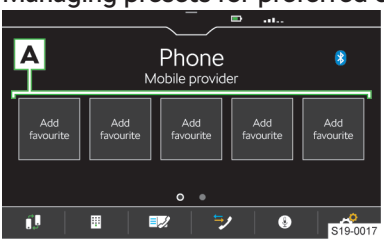
› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

The phone will be connected as an additional phone.

Or:

› If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Managing presets for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset key, hold it in A.
› Select the contact from the list.
› If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.
› To **display the menu for deletion,** go to **Phone** menu and press ⚙ > *User profile* > *Manage favourites*.
› To delete **one** preset preferred contact, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** preset preferred contacts, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to five phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **Telephone** menu, tap ⚙ > *User profile* > *Import contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** menu, tap ⚙ > *User profile* > *Sort by:* and select the sort type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To set the infotainment system ringtone in the **Telephone** menu, tap ⚙ > *User profile* > *Select ringtone*.
› Select the ringtone.

Voice mailbox number

› To set the voice mailbox number in the **Phone** ⚙ > *User profile* > *Voice mailbox number:*.
› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

WLAN can be used for SmartLink connection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 4 mobile devices.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *Connected devices*.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection

with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi hotspot*.
› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 8 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key* .
› Enter the password and confirm.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

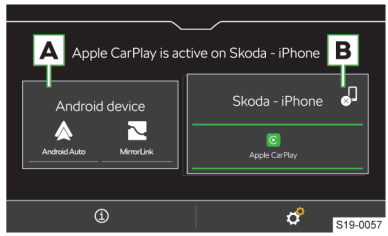
Overview of the SmartLink connection

SmartLink menu

› Tap on **APP**/.

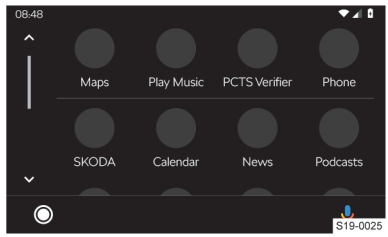
Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > SmartLink.



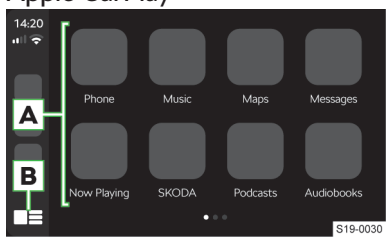
A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink
Separation of the active connection
⚙ Settings for the SmartLink menu

Android Auto



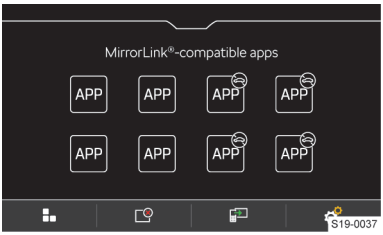
◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Switch on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
› **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay menu
› **Hold:** Switch on Siri voice control

MirrorLink



- It is not possible to operate the application while driving
- Return to the SmartLink menu
- List of running applications
- Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
- Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection, Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the relevant market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Android Autoconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time with the vehicle stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the MirrorLink connection.

  A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- Display of control surfaces at the top
- Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Settings SmartLink

Apple CarPlay – Connection using USB

1. Turn on the Infotainment.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
4. Select the connection using Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Connection via Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. Tap on **MENU** > SmartLink > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.
3. In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .
4. Follow the instructions on the infotainment system screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The infotainment system screen displays a connection message with the name of the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection

› In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap the “SKODA” function button.
› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto – Connection using USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using Android Auto.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

› Tap on **MENU** > > > *mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.
- ✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› On the infotainment system screen, select the Android Auto connection type.

Android Auto – Disconnection

› In the Android Auto menu, > tap “SKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

› Switch on WLAN and visibility in the mobile device.
› Switch on the Infotainment WLAN hotspot under **MENU** > > *WLAN* > *Hotspot WLAN*.
› Find the Infotainment WLAN from the list of available WLAN devices.
› Enter the required password.
› On some mobile devices, you need to confirm in the notification bar of the mobile device that the device is communicating with the Infotainment system.
› Tap **MENU** > > > *Mobile devices*.
› Select from the list of **known devices** the desired device with the symbol.

MirrorLink – Disconnection

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap .
› Tap on ⊗.

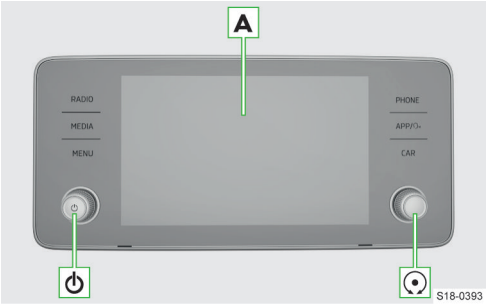
Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on **MENU** > .
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Bolero

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

Rotary control on the left
- **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- **Turn:** Volume setting

Rotary control on the right
- **Press:** Confirm menu item
- **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

PHONE **Phone** menu

APP/ **SmartLink** menu
- **Tap:** Display menu
- **Hold:** Switch voice control for the SmartLink application on/off

CAR Information about vehicle settings

NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

ŠKODA AUTO keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic setting

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > menu:

› Time and date
› Language
› Units
› Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

› Equaliser
› Volume ratio
› Individual Infotainment functions volume

The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

› Volume adjustment of voice commands
› Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
› Speed-dependent volume
› Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

› Space optimisation

› Audio profiles according to genre
› Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

› To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.
› For **manual display** tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration assistant*.

Set up menu MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Safely disconnecting the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device

To disconnect a USB device safely, proceed as follows:

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Safely remove USB*.
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

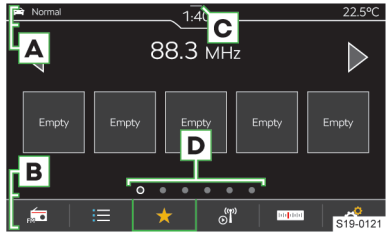
System update

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
› Follow the instructions on the screen.

ⓘ The information about the completed system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Display of the control centre
D Other pages of the menu

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

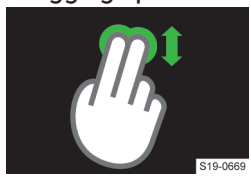
Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



› Quickly review the list of phone contacts

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Screen*:

› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation tones

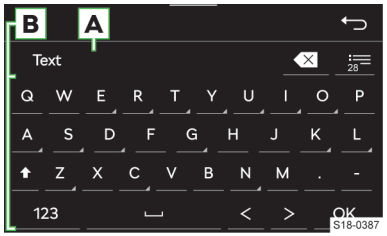
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



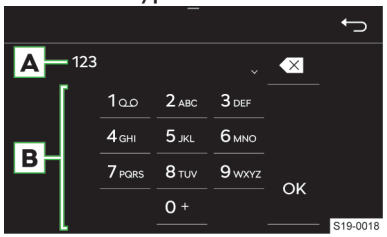
Keypad example

A Input line
› Delete characters before the cursor
› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other

Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces
› Switch to lowercase/uppercase
› **ABC/ÄBB** Switch to the language keypad
› **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
› Show additional keyboard languages
› Insert spaces
› **Hold:** Show more character variants
› < Move cursor to the left
› > Move cursor to the right
› OK Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
› Delete characters before the cursor
› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

› OK Confirm the entered characters

If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap .

Displaying additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must first be set.

› Repeatedly tap or the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

› Press and hold the character with the symbol.
› Select the desired symbol.

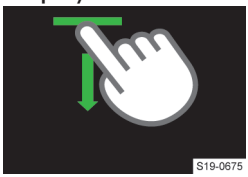
Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > > *Additional keypad languages*.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

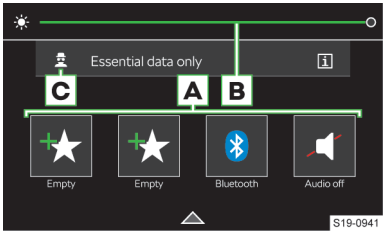
› Tap on .

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Preferred functions

B Setting the instrument and key illumination

C Setting the personal data protection level

Settings

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the ★ icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, tap on the functional surface of the desired function.

› To **remove** the preferred feature, tap on 🗑.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ✕.

Radio

Overview

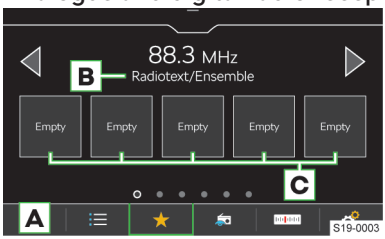
Display menu

› Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > 📻.

Analogue and digital radio reception



A Select frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text
DAB: Radio text: name of the station group

C Preset buttons for preferred stations

☰ List of available stations

★ Show favourites

Show information about the station

Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)

Settings

ⓘ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

› Tap on ☰.

Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB signal is not available

Filter the stations in the list according to the programme type, e.g. culture, music, sports, etc.
FM: with activated RDS function

Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the program type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** press ⚙ > *Scan* or the right rotary control ⊙.

› To **end automatic play** press SCAN or the right rotary control ⊙.

Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› In the Radio main menu, tap ▭.

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control.

Restriction

› Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

› The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Deleting favourites

› In the **Radio** menu, > tap *Clear memory*.
› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** presets for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Functional areas ◁ ▷

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ◁ ▷ functional surfaces in the **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Switching stations:*.
› Select the switching option.

Switching traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Traffic Programme (TP)*.

Switching traffic reception for DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu, switch on the > *Traffic Programme (TP)* menu item.
› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *DAB Traffic Programme (TP)* to switch it on/off.

Adding station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The Infotainment system offers the option to assign logos from images on an external source to the station presets.

For station logos, images in the jpg, png, bmp formats with a maximum resolution of 500x500pixels can be used.

› In **Radio** menu, tap > *Station logos*.
› Tap the desired preset key.
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find the desired logo and confirm.

Delete station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Station logos*.
› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Enabling/disabling automatic addition of the saved station logo to favourites

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic storage of station logos*.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The infotainment system provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose country.

Automatic frequency change to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss on the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Regional RDS:*.
› Select one of the following menu items:
› *Fix* – when the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
› *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If signal is lost in the given region, the Infotainment system will automatically tune to another available region.

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Sort stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Sort list of stations:*.

› Select the sorting of stations in alphabetical order or by group.

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Radio text*.

Switching RDS on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

› Traffic Programme (TP)
› Radio text
› RDS Regional
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo
› Sort stations in the list of available stations

Switch program type display on / off

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

If the function is switched on, additional information on the broadcast program type (PTY) is displayed in the list of available stations. The programs can be filtered based on this information.

Switching additional announcements of DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

Enabling/disabling automatic programme tracking of a DAB station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the DAB station being listened to is lost, the infotainment system automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB - DAB programme tracking*.

Turning automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the DAB station being listened to is lost, the infotainment system automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic DAB – FM switching*.

Switching the Slideshow function on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB slideshow*.

Media

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
› When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
› When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.

› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ♫.



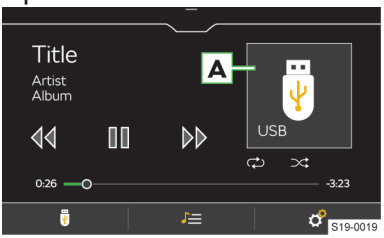
A Selecting a source

♫≡ Manage files / Multimedia database

Settings

Player controls

Operation – basics



A Album image/symbol for the connected source

▷ **Tapping:** starting playback

▯▯ **Tapping:** pause

◁◁ **Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback:** playing the previous track

◁◁ **Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback**: playing the current track from the beginning

◁◁ **Holding:** fast rewinding within the track

▷▷ **Tapping:** playing the next track

▷▷ **Holding:** fast forwarding within the track

You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

› In the **Media** menu tap on > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders.* .

Switch playback of online media from the Apple device on / off

› To **switching on / off** in the menu **media** > tap *Include online media from the iPod device* .

Media in the Apple iCloud will included in the list of available media under the following conditions:

✓ The mobile device is not connected using Apple CarPlay.

✓ The mobile device is connected to the Apple iCloud.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To safely disconnect a USB device, proceed as follows:

› In the **Media** menu > *Remove USB safely* .

› Select the desired device.

› Disconnect the USB device.

🛈 If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that support the USB Mass Storage protocol	
		MTP	Devices having an Android operating system, which support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

ⓘ The Apple-iAP1 protocol is not supported by Infotainment.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
FLAC	flac
RIFF	wav
SBC	-

Files that are protected by DRM and iTunes® technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Mobile device management

Overview

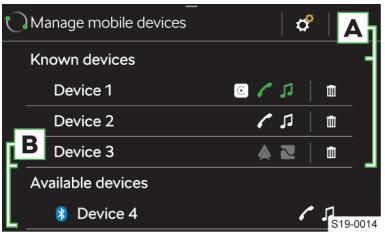
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Displaying mobile device management

› Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone* > .

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > > > *Mobile devices*.



A Connected / Previously connected devices

B Available devices

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®-"hands-free profile"

The device is connected via the Bluetooth®-"hands-free profile"

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile

The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee full Bluetooth® compatibility with infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version and the implementation of the Bluetooth® protocols on the part of the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Applications can be installed in external devices making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Information about ŠKODAapplications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* > 📱.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

The selected device can be connected via the most recently used Bluetooth® profile.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

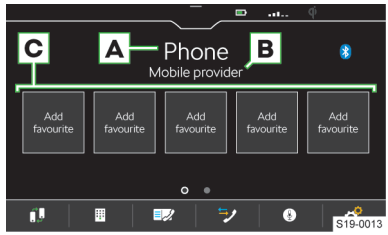
Display menu

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > 📞.

ⓘ If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected phone
› **Tap:** View the list of previously connected phones
B Name of the telephone service provider
C Station buttons for preferred contacts
Change the main telephone with the additional telephone
Enter phone number
Contact list
Call lists
Switch on voice control of the connected phone
Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Phone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦.

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

ⓘ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on 📖.

› To **find** details within the list, tap *Find*.

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦ > ⌾⌾.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call
Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
🔇/🔊 Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
🎙/🎙 Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller
Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the audio from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **Telephone** menu and tap ⚙ > *Handsfree*.

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap 🔊.

Conference call

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Tap to answer a new incoming call.

› To **start** a conference call, tap 👤+👥.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily
The conference call continues in the background
Return to the held conference call
🎙/🎙 Switch the microphone off/on
End conference call
Show details of the conference call

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

End conversation with the conference call participant
Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

› **No telephone**– The telephone is connected as the main telephone.

› **One telephone**– The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

› **Two telephones**– Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on 📳 in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® device.

The name of the device can be found in the **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Name:* menu item.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired phone – no phone is connected

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > .
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired phone – another phone is connected

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone* > .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

The phone will be connected as an additional phone.

Or:

› If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

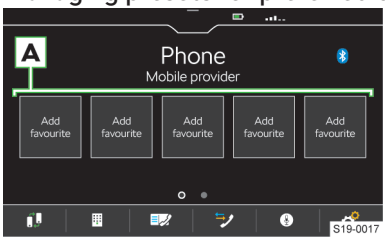
› Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

The phone will be connected as an additional phone.

Or:

› If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Managing presets for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset key, hold it in A.
› Select the contact from the list.
› If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.
› To **display the menu for deletion,** go to **Phone** menu and press > *User profile* > *Manage favourites*.
› To delete **one** preset preferred contact, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** preset preferred contacts, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to five phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **Telephone** menu, tap > *User profile* > *Import contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** menu, tap > *User profile* > *Sort by:* and select the sort type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To set the infotainment system ringtone in the **Telephone** menu, tap > *User profile* > *Select ringtone*.
› Select the ringtone.

Voice mailbox number

› To set the voice mailbox number in the **Phone** > *User profile* > *Voice mailbox number:*.
› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

WLAN can be used for SmartLink connection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 4 mobile devices.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > > *WLAN* > *Connected devices*.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi hotspot*.
› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 8 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key* .

› Enter the password and confirm.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

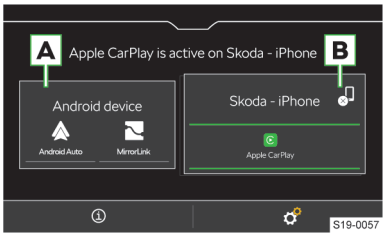
Overview of the SmartLink connection

SmartLink menu

› Tap on **APP**/.

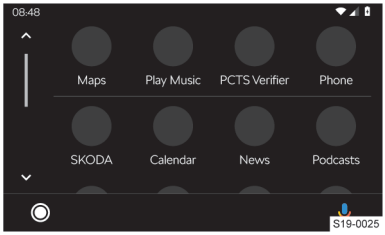
Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > SmartLink.



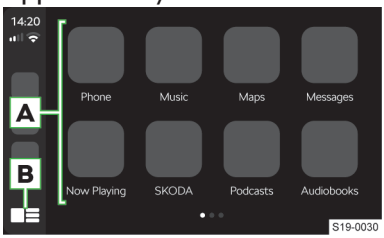
A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink
Separation of the active connection
⚙ Settings for the SmartLink menu

Android Auto



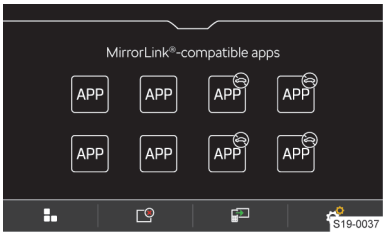
◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Switch on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
› **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay menu
› **Hold:** Switch on Siri voice control

MirrorLink



- It is not possible to operate the application while driving
- Return to the SmartLink menu
- List of running applications
- Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
- Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection, Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the relevant market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Android Autoconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time with the vehicle stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the MirrorLink connection.

  A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- Display of control surfaces at the top
- Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Settings SmartLink

Apple CarPlay – Connection using USB

1. Turn on the Infotainment.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
4. Select the connection using Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Connection via Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. Tap on **MENU** > SmartLink > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.
3. In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol ⚙.
4. Follow the instructions on the infotainment system screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The infotainment system screen displays a connection message with the name of the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection

› In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap the “SKODA” function button.
› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto – Connection using USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using Android Auto.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

› Tap on **MENU** > > > *mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.
- ✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› On the infotainment system screen, select the Android Auto connection type.

Android Auto – Disconnection

› In the Android Auto menu, > tap “SKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

› Switch on WLAN and visibility in the mobile device.
› Switch on the Infotainment WLAN hotspot under **MENU** > > *WLAN* > *Hotspot WLAN*.
› Find the Infotainment WLAN from the list of available WLAN devices.
› Enter the required password.
› On some mobile devices, you need to confirm in the notification bar of the mobile device that the device is communicating with the Infotainment system.
› Tap **MENU** > > > *Mobile devices*.
› Select from the list of **known devices** the desired device with the symbol.

MirrorLink – Disconnection

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap .
› Tap on ⊗.

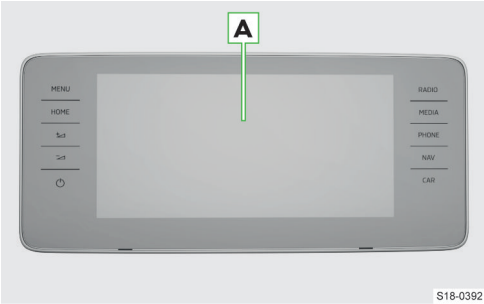
Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on **MENU** > .
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Amundsen

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

MENU All menus

HOME Favourite menus

Increase the volume

Decrease the volume

Condition-based:

- **Infotainment switched off**
  - **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- **Infotainment switched on**
  - **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

NAV **Navigation** menu

CAR Information about vehicle settings

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

- The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

ŠKODA AUTO keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > menu:

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  - Speed-dependent volume
  - Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

- Space optimisation

› Audio profiles according to genre
› Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

› To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.
› For **manual display** tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration assistant*.

Set up menu HOME

› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen with two fingers and drag it to the left or right.

To **add the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

› Tap on an empty functional surface.

Or:

› Press and hold an occupied functional surface and then tap on an empty functional area.
› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.
› Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

To **remove the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

› Press an occupied functional surface.
› Tap on 🗑.
› Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

Set up menu MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

System update

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software* .
› Follow the instructions on the screen.

ⓘ The information regarding the completed system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Display of the control centre
D Other pages of the menu

Operation

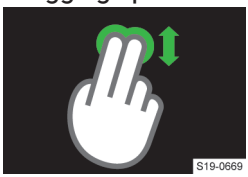
ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!
› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

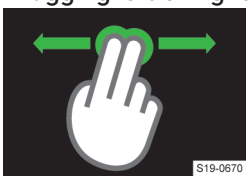
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



› Quickly review the list of phone contacts
› Switch 2D/3D map display

Dragging left or right with two fingers



› Display next page of the HOME menu

Pulling apart with two fingers



› Enlarge image
› Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



› Minimize image
› Zoom out of the map

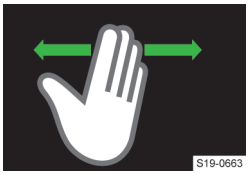
Turn two fingers



› Rotate image
› Rotate the map

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Screen*:

› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation sounds and animations

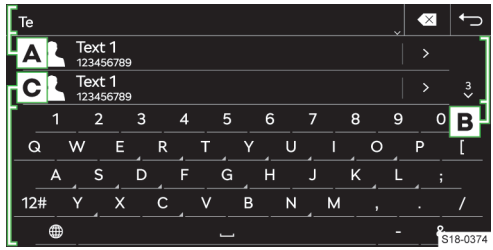
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



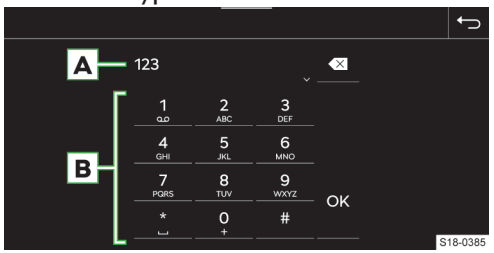
Keypad example

A Input line
› Delete characters before the cursor
› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
› Display functional surfaces for moving the cursor in the input line
› Move cursor to the left
› Move cursor to the right

B Entries found
› Show list

C Keypad functional surfaces
› Change to lowercase
› Switch to first having an upper-case letter, followed by lower-case letters
› Switch to uppercase
› **ABC/АБВ** Switch to the language keypad
› **12#** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
› **1/2/2/2**Switch to other character variants
› Show additional keyboard languages
› Insert spaces
› The next line
› **Hold:** Show more character variants
› Show password
› **OK** Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line

› Delete characters before the cursor

› **Tap:** delete the last character

› **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

› OK Confirm the entered characters

If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Find

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ⌄.

Displaying additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must first be set.

› Repeatedly tap ⊕ or the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

› Press and hold the character with the A symbol.

› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle

Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Online voice control

Online voice control allows online recognition and control of other vehicle functions.

Online voice control understands whole sentences spoken fluently. You do not need to use any precise instructions or phrases.

Online voice control can be used, for example, to search for special destinations or to dictate an SMS message if the connected phone allows it.

The feature allows you to combine searches in online data and off-line Infotainment system data. The transition between online and off-line searches is seamless and not noticeable to the user.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ Infotainment switched on

Extended Voice Control – conditions

In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

✓ The vehicle supports the function.

✓ The vehicle is equipped with the Infotainment system and functions that can be controlled by Extended Voice Control.

✓ ŠKODA Connect services are active.

✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network providing ŠKODA Connect services.

✓ The privacy level is set to *Sharing vehicle position*.

Activation command recognition condition

✓ Enabled **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed in the status bar.

Entering a voice command

› With the voice control switched on, say the voice command.

The symbol is displayed while the voice command is being recognised.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays a message. The symbol is displayed while the message is being played.

After the voice command is executed, the voice control switches off.

You can speed up voice control as follows:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** together with the voice command.
› Interrupt the voice assistant's response with a new command.

If the voice control does not respond to the voice command, try expanding the command more or using a verb in the command. For example, instead of a command "parking lot", say "find a parking lot".

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming a paused voice control

A paused voice control can be restored in the following ways:

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› Press on the Infotainment system display.
› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** again.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*:

› Confirmation tones
› Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"overview"**.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

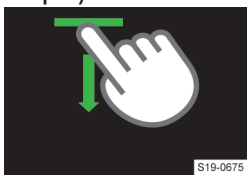
The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn** **MENU** > > *voice control* on/off, tap > *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control Centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

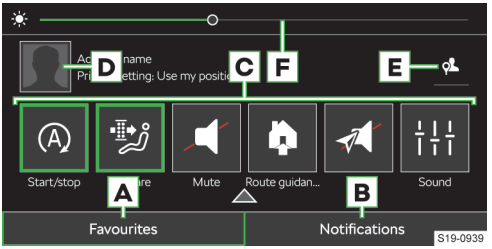
› Tap on .

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- **A** Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features
- **B** Display list of informational messages
- **C** Preferred functions
- **D** Display user account management
- **E** Setting the personal data protection level
- **F** Setting the instrument and key illumination

Setting buttons of preferred functions

- To **display** editing mode, hold any functional area for the preferred feature.
- To **add** the preferred feature, hold the button and move the desired function from the top of the screen to the button at the bottom of the display.
- To **close** the edit mode, press ✕.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

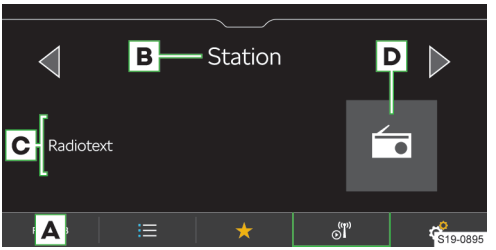
- Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

- Tap **MENU** > .

Analogue and digital radio player

- Tap **A** and select the desired frequency range.
- Tap ⁝≡ and search for or select the desired station.
- Tap on .



- **A** Select source
- **B** Station name
- **C** Information about the broadcast content
- **D** Station logos
- ⁝≡ List of available stations
- ★ Show favourites
- Information about the station
- Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)
- Settings

List of available analogue and digital radio stations

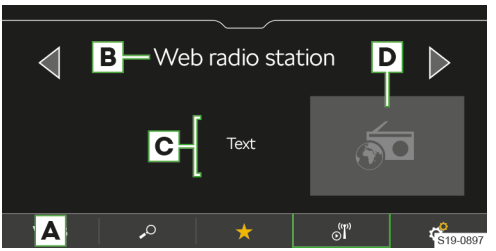
- Tap on ⁝≡.

- Played station
- ★ Station stored on the presets
- TP A traffic radio station is set
- The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station
- Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

Web radio player

- Tap **A** and select the web radio.
- Tap and search for or select the web radio.
- Tap .



- **A** Selecting a source
- **B** Station name
- **C** Broadcast content information
- **D** Station logo

- List of web radio stations and podcasts
- ★ Show favourites
- Information about the radio station and web radio content
- Settings

Podcast player

› Tap A and select the web radio.

› Tap and search for or select the podcast.

› Tap .



- A Selecting a source
- B Podcast name
- C Broadcast content information
- D Podcast logo with the symbol
- ▷ **Tapping:** starting playback
- **Tapping:** pause
- **Pressing:** moving 15 seconds back
- **Pressing:** moving 15 seconds forward
- View episodes from the podcast being played
- List of web radio stations and podcasts
- ★ Show favourites
- View podcast information
- Settings

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› Tap on .

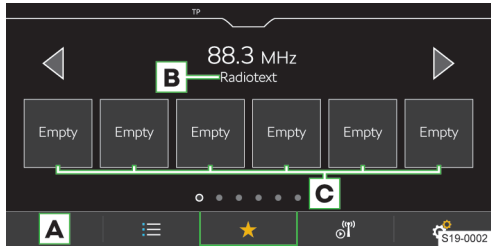


- Search for web radio stations and podcasts
- Recently played web radio stations and podcasts
- 100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set
- Go to podcasts and select
- Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country
- Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language
- Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre
- See list of related podcasts based on content listened to
- See list of related podcasts based on content listened to

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

List of favourite stations and podcasts

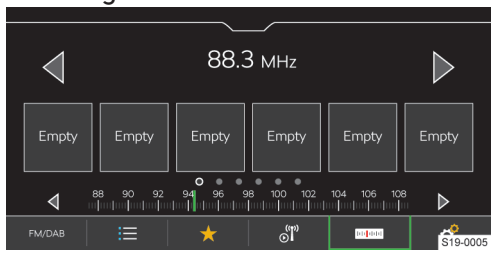
› In the menu Radio, tap on ★.



- A Select source
- B Radio text
- C Station buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

Operation

Selecting a station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** > press *Scan* .

› To **stop automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› To display the button AM for FM station, switch on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Show stations:* > *FM*.

› Tap AM in the Radio menu.

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restriction

› Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

› The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap the desired preset button.

Save channels from the list of web radio stations and podcasts

Valid for web radio stations and podcasts.

› Select a web radio station as the playback source.

› Tap on 🔍.

› Go to the desired web radio station or podcast and select it.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.

› Tap the desired preset button.

ⓘ With podcasts, it is not possible to save the individual episodes.

Deleting favourites

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Delete memory entries* .

› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.

› To delete **all** station buttons for preferred stations *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

◁ ▷ buttons for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ◁ ▷ functional surfaces in the **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Switching stations:*.

› Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or stations in the list of available stations.

◁ ▷ buttons for web radios and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ◁ ▷ functional surfaces in the **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Switching stations:*.

› Select the option to switch between stations stored in your favourites presets or stations in the list of available stations and podcasts.

Switch on/switch off traffic reception (TP) for stations

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Assign station logo from the Infotainment memory

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of assigning logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Station logos* .

› Select the desired station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Station logos* .

› To select the desired station. *No station logo* .

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio text* .

Switching the function on/off Slideshow

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› Press the displayed radio text in the **Radio** player.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The infotainment system provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.

› Choose country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Switch RDS on / off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

› Traffic programme (TP)
› Radio text
› RDS Regional
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Display FM-/DAB-stations or FM-stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Station display:* .

› Select one of the following menu items:

› *FM/DAB* – the list shows available FM- and DAB stations.

› *FM* – the list shows available FM stations.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality, tap on > Audio quality: in the **Radio** main menu. *Audio quality:* .

› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.

› When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.

› When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.

› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

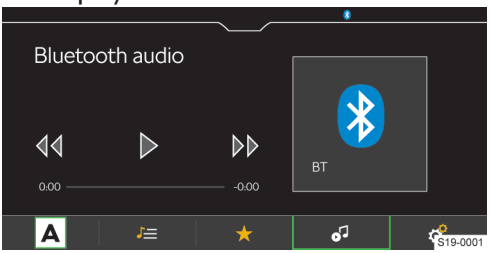
Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

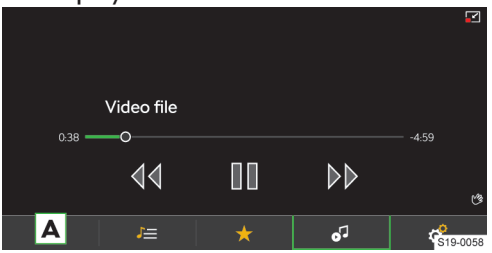
› Tap **MENU** > ♫.

Audio player



A Selecting a source
Manage files / Multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Details about the title being played
Settings

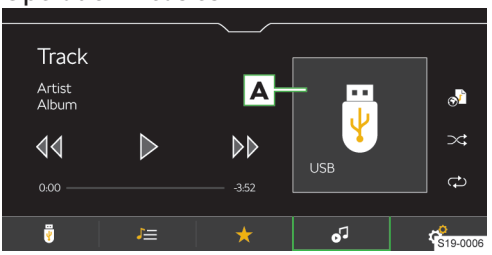
Video player



A Selecting a source
Manage files / Multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Video display
Downloading an image
Stretching the image
Settings

Player controls

Operation – basics



A Album image/symbol for the connected source
› **Tapping:** overview of available albums
▷ **Tapping:** starting playback
Tapping: pause
Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track
Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning
Holding: fast rewinding within the track
Tapping: playing the next track
Holding: fast forwarding within the track

You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track
Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder
Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder
Save the played track in the playlist "*My playlist*"

Managing "My playlist"

› To **display the playlist**, tap > > > .
› To **manage the playlist**, tap in the displayed playlist.

You can do the following in playlist management:

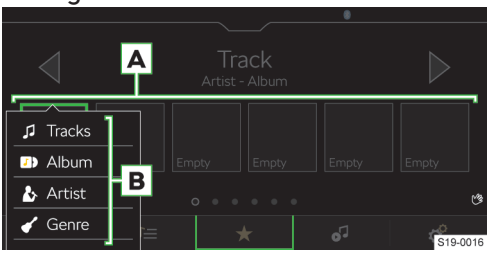
› Control playback
› Change the order of a track in the list by holding and dragging it to the desired position.
› Delete titles by pressing

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Manage favourites



› To **save**, hold the desired functional area for favourites A.
› Choose one of the available list entries B.

› To **Clear**, in the menu **media** > tap on *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **a favourite**, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all favourites** tap on *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that support the USB Mass Storage protocol	
		MTP	Devices having an Android operating system, which support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices running the iOS operating system and iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files that are protected by DRM and iTunes® technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
Xvid	Xvid
WMV9	wmv asf

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl

Codec type	File extension
ASX	asx

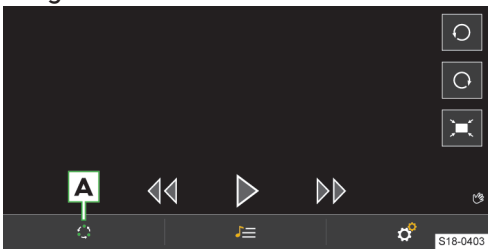
Images

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > .

Image browser



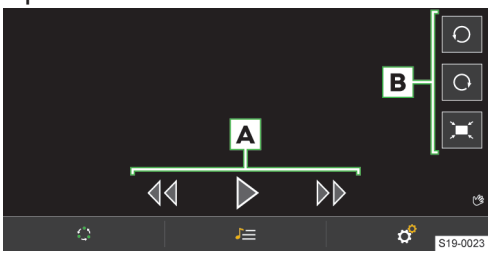
A Selecting a source

File management

Settings

Operation

Operation with buttons



A Browsing images

› Displaying the next image

› Displaying the previous image

› Starting a slideshow

› Pausing the slideshow

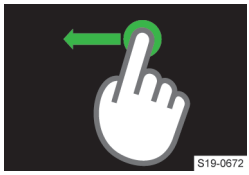
B Displaying an image

› Rotating to the left

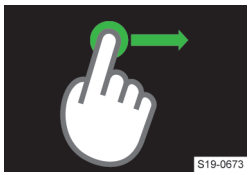
› Rotating to the right

› Displaying in default size

Gesture control



› Display of the next image



› Display the previous image



› Increase the image size



› Reduce the image size



› Rotate by 90 °

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > > menu:

› Display image size

› Display image duration during the slideshow

› Slideshow repeat

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Maximum resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 (Progressive Mode) 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

Maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.
› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

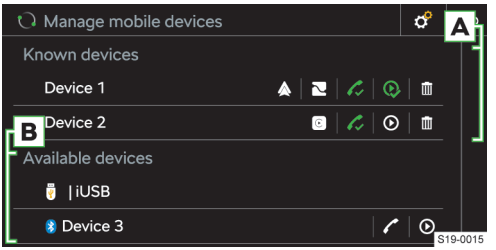
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.



A Connected / Previously connected devices
B Available devices
The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® "hands-free profile"
The device is connected via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee full Bluetooth® compatibility with infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version and the implementation of the Bluetooth® protocols on the part of the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Applications can be installed in external devices making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Information about ŠKODAapplications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

› Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

Or:

› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ✓.

ⓘ If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected telephone
› **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Name of telephone service providers
› If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

C Preset buttons for preferred contacts

Change the main telephone with the additional telephone

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Text messages / emails

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

ⓘ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on .

› To **search** within the list, tap on *Enter contact* .

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > .

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call

Answer an incoming call / return to the held call

Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

Reject an incoming call using an SMS message

Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to **telephone** in the menu and tap on ⚙ > *speakerphone* .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily
The conference will continue in the background

Return to the held conference call

Switch the microphone off / on

End conference call

Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Messages* > *New SMS* .
› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
› *Tap on Send* .

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Messages* > or .
› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting:

To **switch the display of messages in a conversation on or off**, tap in the **Phone** >menu*Show messages as conversation* .

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** >menu *New message notifications* .

Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if is tapped.

Send e-mails

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Emails* > *New emails* .
› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

The text can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
› Enter the subject of the e-mail.
› *Tap on Send* .

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Emails* > .
› Select the desired e-mail.
› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new email **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** >menu *New message notifications* .

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

› **No telephone**– The telephone is connected as the main telephone.
› **One telephone**– The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
› **Two telephones**– Select the telephone to be replaced.
› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in menu item **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non–paired phone – no phone is connected

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > .
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non– paired phone – another phone is connected

› Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
› Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

The phone will be connected as an additional phone.

Or:

› If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched

on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

› Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

Or:

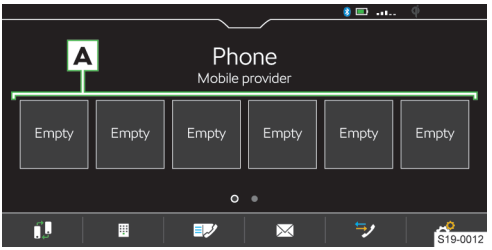
› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

The phone will be connected as an additional phone.

Or:

› If two phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset button, hold A.
› Select a contact from the displayed list.
› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
› To **display the menu for deletion,** go to the **phone** menu ⚙ >and tap on *Manage favourites* .
› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Sort by:* Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** ⚙ >menu *select the ringtone* .
› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *Mailbox number:* .
› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off

If the function is activated, when a new message / e-mail is received, the symbol of a new message is displayed in the status bar and in the functional surface for the messages.

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

Wi-Fi

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

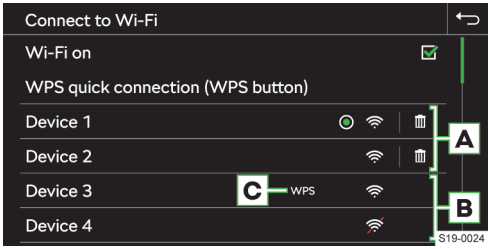
The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots
B Available hotspots
C The hotspot supports the WPS connection
⊙ Currently connected hotspot

- Delete information about the hotspot connection
- Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot
- The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *WiFi active* switch on

› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.

› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Activate/deactivate data transfer between the Infotainment and the connected device

› To turn data transmission on or off, tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > .

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network key* .

› Enter the password and confirm.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.

› **MENU**> > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button)* .

Automatic WPS connection

› **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* > > *WPS-PIN* .

› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.

› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

› Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.

› Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
› For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
› If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

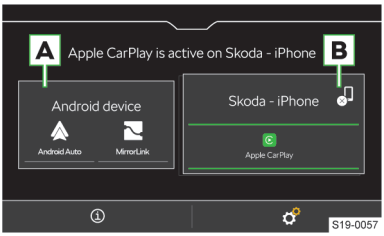
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLink connection

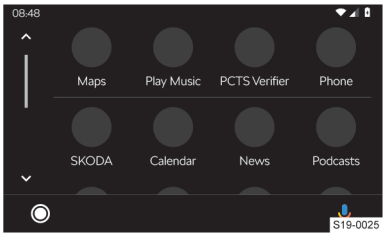
Menu SmartLink

› Tap **MENU** > SmartLink.



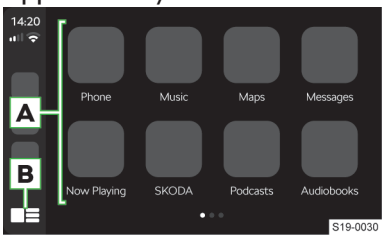
A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink
Separation of the active connection
Settings for the SmartLink menu

Android Auto



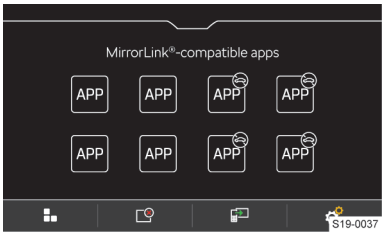
◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Switch on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
› **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay menu
› **Hold:** Switch on Siri voice control

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving
Return to the SmartLink menu
List of running applications
Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection, Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.

- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the relevant market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Android Autoconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time with the vehicle stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the MirrorLink connection.

  A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- Display of control surfaces at the top
- Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – Connection using USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Switch on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
- › Select the connection using Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
- › **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .
- › In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol ⚙.
- › Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.

- › In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
- › Press and hold the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

  The infotainment system screen displays a connection message with the name of the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.
- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnect

› In the menu Apple CarPlay, tap on the function area “SKODA”.

› Tap on .

Android Auto – Connection using USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .

› Select the connection using Android Auto.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

› Tap on **MENU** > > > *mobile devices*.

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.

✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.

› If necessary, confirm the PIN.

› On the infotainment system screen, select the Android Auto connection type.

Android Auto – Disconnect

› In the menu Android Auto > tap “SKODA”.

› Tap on .

MirrorLink – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .

› Select the connection using MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – Disconnect

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on .

› Tap on .

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on **MENU** > .

› Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation instructions

The Infotainment system navigates using graphic and voice navigation instructions.

Voice instructions are generated by the Infotainment system and it cannot always be guaranteed that the instructions, e.g. street or city names, can be clearly understood.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ··· > .

Turn off navigation announcements

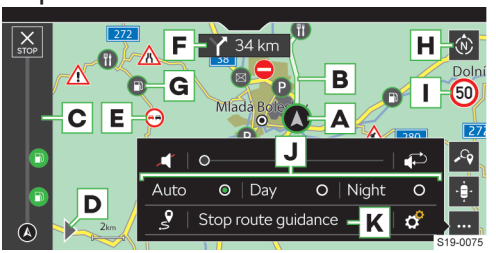
› Tap on ··· > .

Navigation overviews

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > .

Map overview



A Vehicle location

B Route

C Route preview

STOP Exit navigation

D Display the destination entry menu and route preview

E Traffic restrictions

F The following navigation instruction

G Special destination

H Changing map orientation

› 2D north-facing map

› 2D map oriented by direction of travel

› 3D map oriented by direction of travel

I Traffic signs for the route section

Finding a destination

Map centred on vehicle position

··· **Display settings menu**

Switching off navigation messages

Repeating the last navigation instruction

J Map display depends on the following settings:

- *Auto* – map in day/night mode depending on the activated lights of the vehicle
- *Day* – map in day mode
- *Night* – map in night mode

K Exit navigation

Display of the entire route

Settings

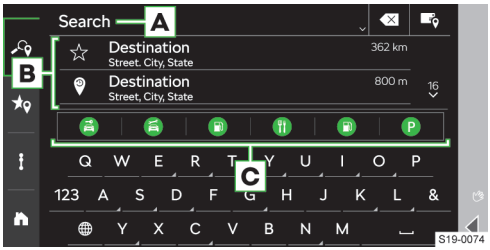
Map display in the digital instrument cluster

The map can be displayed in the digital instrument cluster or on the Infotainment system display.

› To **switch the display**, tap the **Navigation** ··· › menu.

Find destination

› Tap › .



A Input line

B List of recently searched destinations

C POI categories

- **Tap:** search for the selected category

Show destination list

Enter destination via address / find destination

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Selecting the destination entered via the address

› Tap on .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

› Enter the required information.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

List of stored destinations

› Tap on › › .



A List of stored destinations

B Select category of stored destinations

- – Favourites
- – Last destinations
- – Telephone contact destinations

Selecting the stored destination

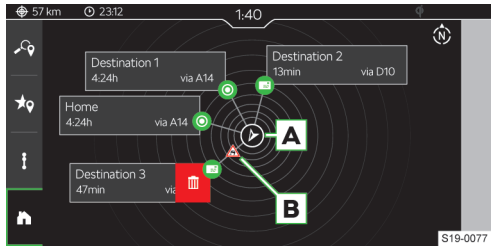
› Select the category of stored destinations.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Recommended destinations

› Tap on › › .



A North-facing vehicle position

B Traffic obstruction

Delete the recommended destination

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories:

- Destination – home address
- Destination – business address
- Favourites
- Last destinations

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

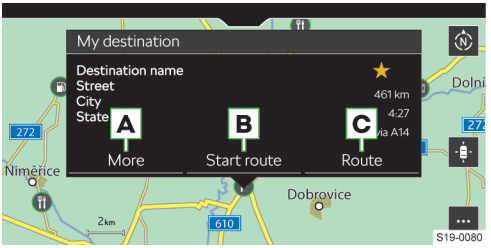
Delete the recommended destination

› Touch the functional surface for the recommended destination and swipe left.

› Tap on 🗑.

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.

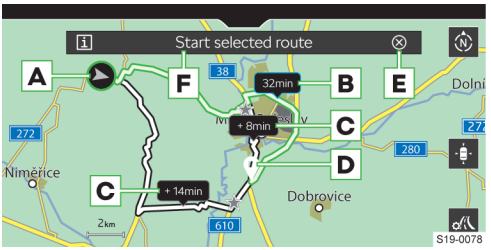


A Show destination details with the following possible settings:
- › ☆ – Save destination as a favourite
- › ★ – Delete favourites
- › 🎬 – Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode

B Start direct route guidance

C Route calculation

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance
- › **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown

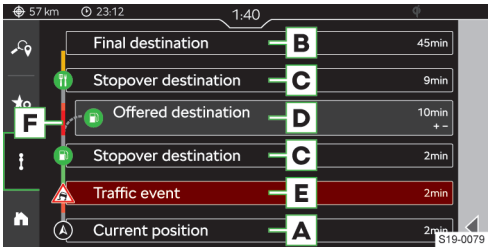
F Start route guidance

Show information on the selected route

Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview

› Tap on ▸ > ⁞.



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:
- › *Show on map*
- › *Stop route guidance*

C Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:
- › *Show on map*
- › *Add stopover destination*

D Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:
- › *Show on map*
- › *Delete*

E Traffic obstruction on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:
- › *Show on map*
- › *Avoid*

F Route view

Changing route destinations

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Traffic density overview

If the ŠKODA Connect online services are active, the following colour scale can be used to display traffic density information in the F route overview:

Low density — — — — High density

– Traffic density information is not available

Touch operation

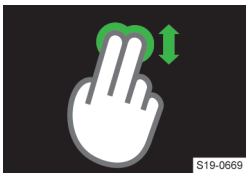
Gesture control



› Move map



› Enter destination by tapping the map item



› Switch 2D/3D map display



› Zoom into the map



› Zoom out of the map



› Rotate the map

Restriction

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings:

› ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Avoid traffic incidents* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Showing information on the destination / waypoint

The status line displays information on the distance and travel time to the destination, depending on the following setting.

› ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Show information for:* .

› Select the desired menu item for the destination type.

Showing arrival time information in the destination / driving time

The status line displays information on the travel time depending on the following setting.

› ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Time display:* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off

When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the traffic signs display on/off

When this function is switched on, the Infotainment system displays traffic signs along the route.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Directions to your destination* > *Traffic signs* > *Show on the map*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off

When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Information signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off

When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Fuel warning*.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Road signs*.
› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Settings for trailer operation

To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Maximum speed for trailers*.
› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Set route options

› In the overview of the route destinations, tap on ⚙.
› Select the desired list entries.

Setting navigation announcements

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *navigation announcements*.
› Select and set the desired menu item.

Show preferred POI categories

Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Define preferred POI categories*.
› Set favourite categories.

Setting home address

The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter home address*.

Setting business address

The defined destination of the business address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter business address*.

Switching demo mode on / off

In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› ··· > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Demo mode* .

Defining the starting point of the demo mode

› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.
› In the displayed destination details, tap *More* > ▣.

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Automatic update

Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met.

✓ The Infotainment Online online services are available.
✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Regulations

The rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement. Current legal documents regarding the ŠKODA Connect services are available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as in the MyŠKODA application.

Functionality

The ŠKODA Connect services allow you to connect the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

The ŠKODA Connect services are not included in the equipment of the vehicle. These will be published separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the MyŠKODA application or in Infotainment, if Infotainment allows this.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country.

ŠKODA Connect website

The ŠKODA Connect website contains e.g. the current information on the ŠKODA Connect services, the reference to the ŠKODA Connect Portal or the option to download the MyŠKODA application.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

ŠKODA Connect Portal website

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

https://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Conditions

Terms of use of the ŠKODA Connect services

- ✓ A main user is registered in the vehicle.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ A user currently logged in is authorized to use the ŠKODA Connect services.
- ✓ The protection level set for sending personal data enables the use of ŠKODA Connect services.

Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services

Availability depends on the following conditions:

- › Cellular networks through which the connection to the ŠKODA Connect services is ensured are available.
  - › The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.
  - › In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.
- › The ŠKODA Connect services are available for your vehicle, infotainment and the respective country.
  - › The availability can be checked on the following ŠKODA Connect website:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability status of the ŠKODA Connect services

The availability of the services is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- › **White** – the ŠKODA Connect services are available.

› **Grey** – the ŠKODA Connect services are not available.

MyŠKODA application

Functionality

MyŠKODA application

The MyŠKODA application enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services or remote access to the vehicle.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link:

https://go.skoda.eu/myskoda-app

Requirements

✓ The user has one ŠKODA ID account linked to the vehicle.

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active in the vehicle.

User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services

Functionality

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

User registration for the ŠKODA Connect services can be done at the following locations.

› ŠKODA Connect Portal website
› MyŠKODA application
› Infotainment which supports this function

When registering, create an S-PIN.
You will need the S-PIN to register for certain ŠKODA Connect services as well as to register for the protected user account.

Settings

Registration and activation of online services

Applies to Infotainment Swing and Bolero.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› **MENU** > > *ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)* > *Registration* .
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN you have received during user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portalwebsite or in the MyŠKODA application.
› Wait for message *Vehicle activation is complete.* to appear.
› Confirm any messages on the screen.

Register users in Infotainment

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

› Switch on the Infotainment and in the displayed welcome window tap *Switch users* > *Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

› **MENU** > > > *New user* > *Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

To complete registration, access to the e-mail box entered during registration is required.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services when registering the main user

After the main user has been registered, the Infotainment prompts you to activate ŠKODA Connect services.

To complete the activation, it is necessary to have two original vehicle keys with you.

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services of another registered user

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Become main user* .
› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a contracting party with regard to the use of the ŠKODA Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and the right to privacy.

Inform the vehicle user and passengers that the vehicle is transmitting user data and using localization services. Failure to provide information can violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

If the passengers do not agree to the use of the localization services, switch off the services by setting the respective protection level for personal data.

Functionality

When using the ŠKODA Connectservices, the user and vehicle data, as well as information on localisation services, is sent.

How it is sent is influenced by the setting of the level of personal data protection.

The level of personal data protection that is set influences data transfer via eSIM. The data transmission of connected devices via Wi-Fi is not affected.

Settings

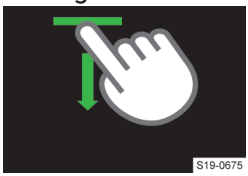
The legally required services, e.g. emergency call, cannot be switched off.

Every vehicle user can set the protection level of personal data.

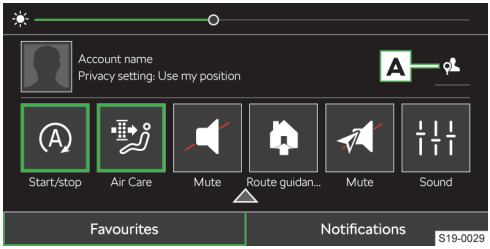
The level of protection of personal data is linked to the user account. After the user has logged on, this is set according to the level last set.

it is necessary to activate localisation services for the full function of some ŠKODA Connect services.

Settings in the control centre



› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



Display example in Infotainment Amundsen

A Tapping the symbol displays a menu for setting the protection level for personal data.

Tap Set-up in user management

› **MENU** > > > *Privacy and service management* .

› Set the desired level of protection of personal data.

Maximum privacy

› All ŠKODA Connect services other than the services you need are turned off.

› All localisation services are turned off. The vehicle position information is not shared.

› Information transmission via eSIM is switched off.

› No online updates available.

No position data

› All localisation services ŠKODA Connect are turned off. The vehicle position information is not shared.

› Information transmission via eSIM is switched on.

› All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Use my position

› Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. Information on vehicle position is not provided to other people.

› Information on the vehicle position is not available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the MyŠKODA application.

› Information transmission via eSIM is switched on.

› All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Share my position

› Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.

› Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the MyŠKODA application.

› Information transmission via eSIM is switched on.

› All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Collection of anonymised data

When the protection level of personal data is set *Use location* and *Share my location* the vehicle can collect and send anonymised data to improve the services of selected third parties.

It is exclusively anonymous data without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or other authorized users.

User management

What you should be mindful of

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner can still have the possibility to

control the vehicle functions and receive information about the users and the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend deleting the previous main user. Then, log in with your own user account and set yourself as the main user of the vehicle.

If you register a new user and select yourself as the main user during registration, the previous main user is automatically overwritten.

ⓘ The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

User accounts

User Management displays the accounts of the last active users. The following activities can be carried out in user management:

- Select a user account
- Register user
- Active ŠKODA Connect services
- Add and remove user accounts
- Set the main users
- Set account security

Overview

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

The main user

The main user is registered in the Infotainment system with activated ŠKODA Connect services and a vehicle assigned to their account.

The main user can make full use of the personalisation function.

The main user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

The main user has access to remote vehicle functions.

All settings are stored in the main user's personal online account.

User with a ŠKODA Connect online account

The user was not selected by the main user, but has his own ŠKODA Connect online account.

The user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

All settings are saved in the registered user's personal online account.

Guest

A guest account is anonymous and will in no way synchronise with ŠKODA Connect services.

All changes to settings related to this account are stored exclusively in the vehicle.

Conditions

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

The following conditions must be met for unlimited use of the management of user accounts and their synchronization with online accounts:

- ✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

Log in user

After switching on the ignition ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the introductory login screen for the last user account used is displayed.

ⓘ The introductory log on screen cannot be skipped. Without registering, the Infotainment cannot be used.

- Confirm the log-in.

  When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

- Select the menu item for switching user.

  A menu containing available users is displayed.
- Select the desired account.
- When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

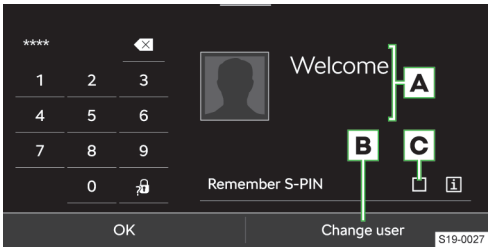
- Select the menu item for switching user.

  A menu containing available users is displayed.
- If you are a new user tap *New user* to register the user.
- Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Log in to the protected user account

Some user accounts can be protected. Protected accounts are shown in the user list with the icon 🔒.

To **log in** to the protected user account you need the S-PINcreated when creating the user account on the ŠKODA Connect Portal Portal website, in the MyŠKODA application or when registering the user in infotainment.



A User name

B Display user account management

C Turn off logging in to the account using the S-PIN

Display information about S-PIN

Display information about restoring the S-PIN

It is possible to switch user verification on / of by entering the S-PIN in the menu item **MENU** > > > *Protect user profile* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN* .

Restore S-PIN

Your S-PIN can be restored on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the MyŠKODA application.

› After restoring the S-PIN, register again for the MyŠKODA application to function correctly in the vehicle as the main user.

› If you are the main user in several vehicles, register again in each vehicle.

User logging out

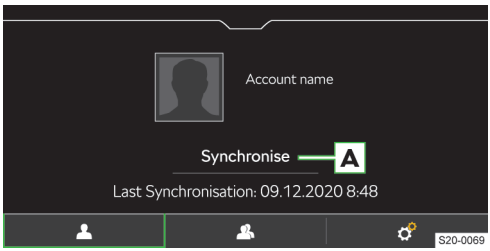
When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen appears and the user is automatically logged out.

Settings

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

User management

› Tap on **MENU** > .



A Online synchronization of the user account with the information about the last synchronization

Details of the currently selected user

› – A user account protected by the S-PIN

Change to another user / input data for a new user

Settings

Tap Become main user

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Become main user* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Delete user

› To display the user accounts, tap **MENU** > > > *Delete users* .

› To delete the user, select the user and confirm the deletion.

Deleting the main user account will delete the shared user accounts.

Delete the current user account

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Delete user profile* .

› Confirm the deletion.

Delete all users

Resetting the Infotainment to the factory settings will delete all user accounts.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.

› Tap **MENU** > .

› *Restore factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

Personalisation

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The personalisation service allows you to set, set and store vehicle settings.

The personalisation service is connected to the user accounts. Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

If the vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile phone network, personalisable settings are stored in the ŠKODA ID online user account after the ignition is switched off.

By registering for a user account in another ŠKODA brand vehicle, the custom functions associated with the user account are set according to vehicle type, equipment and infotainment.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

Switch personalisation service on / off

› **MENU** > > > *Privacy settings and manage services* .

› In the displayed list of online services, select the service **personalisation**.

› Switch the service off / on.

Management of online services

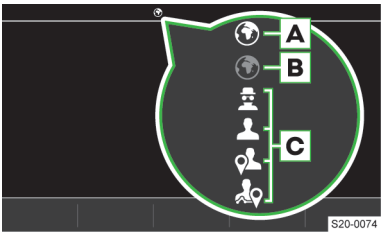
Usage

The following activities can be carried out in service management:

- Set protection of personal data
- Show the list of available services
- Receive information about the status of the services
- Receive information about the validity of the services
- Switch the use of the services on/off

Connection status of online services

Connection status of ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by a symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system display.



A ŠKODA Connect online services are available

B ŠKODA Connect online services are not available

C The set personal data protection level

Maximum privacy mode

Vehicle and user data

Using vehicle location

Sharing vehicle location

Requirements

✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Show list of online services

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Privacy settings and manage services* .

Show details of services

› Select the desired service from the list of online services.

Details about the service may contain the following information and functions:

› Status of the service

› Reason for the unavailability of the service

› Name of the group of online services in which the respective service is found

› Expiry date of the service's validity

› Switch use of the service on/off

Settings

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

Switch on/off use of the service

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Privacy settings and manage services* .

› Select the desired service from the list of online services displayed.

› Switch the desired service on / off.

ⓘ The use of the service applies to all user accounts. The service can only be used if it is available.

eSIM data connection

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

For ŠKODA Connect services, the prepaid e-SIM data connection for online services can be used.

The data connection can be shared with another 8 connected devices using Wi-Fi.

Further information on the function of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and on the overview of the data plans and countries, with the possibility of obtaining them, can be found on the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Requirements

› In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.

› The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.

› ŠKODA AUTO can make changes to the mobile network in the meantime, e.g. generation-related replacement of an outdated technology; it assumes no liability.

Operation

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

Show ŠKODA Connect data packets

› **MENU** > > *Data connection* > *Data packets* .

The following information is displayed in the overview:

› Overview of the plans purchased
› Use of the data plans
› The plan is valid

The validity of the plan expires when the plan is fully used or when the period of validity expires.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

Switch the use of the ŠKODA Connect services on/off.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Integrated data connection (eSIM)* .

Online System Update

Use

The online update enables a software update.

The Infotainment automatically indicates a possible online update by showing a message on the Infotainment screen. Infotainment also offers the option of downloading the update or postponing the download process.

More information on online updates, their availability in the respective countries, on supported vehicles can be found on the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

If the approval for the update is postponed, the next time the ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the option to start the update will be offered once again.

Operation

Download update

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Follow the instructions and information displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Confirm the download in the Infotainment.

The download process can be cancelled at any time. When the ignition is switched on again, the download process is automatically restored.

The download time depends on the speed and quality of the mobile network, the file size, and the type of update.

Install the update

⚠ WARNING

During installation, some control devices including the connectivity control device (OCU) may not work. In this event, there are no emergency calls, no automatic emergency calls in the event of an accident and none of the ŠKODA Connectservices will be available.

› Install the update while the vehicle is stationary.
› Park the vehicle safely.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Confirm the software installation on the Infotainment screen.

The vehicle can be left while the installation continues.

› Switch on the ignition and Infotainment after installation or return to the vehicle.
› Check the message regarding successful installation on the Infotainment screen.

The emergency call indicator light does not light up during installation.

After a successful installation, the emergency call indicator lamp lights up green.

Requirements

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

✓ The ignition and the Infotainment are switched off.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services were activated in the vehicle.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.
✓ The vehicle has an internet connection.
✓ The *Maximum privacy* is not set in the vehicle.
✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

Self-help

If any of the following events occur while downloading the update or during installation, please contact a service provider:

› A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect download or installation of the update.
› The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
› The emergency call indicator lamp lights up red.

Shop

Use

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

You can do the following activities in the Infotainment system Shop menu:

- Order new features and services ŠKODA Connect
- Renew purchased features and services ŠKODA Connect
- Buy data packages

  Data packages can also be used by devices connected via WLAN.

  For more information on data packages, please visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Services and features may be time-limited or permanent.

Services and features can also be purchased on the ŠKODA Connect Shop website.

https://shop.skoda-connect.com

Overview

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

- Tap **MENU** > .
- Select the desired function or service from the list that is displayed.

Conditions

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

The availability of services and features depends on the type of vehicle, type of the Infotainment system and the country.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and features:

- ✓ The Infotainment system supports activation of new services and features.
- ✓ The vehicle equipment allows the use of the new service or feature.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged in.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- ✓ The 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Some services or functions require an active data connection. The data connection may incur a charge.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of ŠKODA Connect services.

Restriction

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information call

Usage

The information call may be used in the case of problems with the ŠKODA Connect services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

By pressing the button , the connection to the local Infoline is made.

Requirements

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .

  To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to *Share my position* .

Operation



- Press the button.

Breakdown call

Usage

The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

By pressing the key a connection is established with the ŠKODABreakdown Service. At the same time, the vehicle sends information about the vehicle condition and the vehicle position.

Requirements

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .

  To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to *Share my position* .

Operation



› Press the button.

Service schedules

Usage

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ A service partner is selected on the ŠKODA Connect Portal or in MyŠKODA application, and Service appointment scheduling is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system type are supported.
- ✓ The personal data protection level is not set to *Maximum privacy*.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Vehicle status report

Usage

The vehicle health report function enables the vehicle status to be tracked online.

The service is in the MyŠKODA application is available.

The available vehicle data includes, for example, the distance travelled, selected warning messages or service inspection requirements.

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The set protection level for personal data that enables the required data to be sent.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

ŠKODA Connect-Services

Usage

Remote access to the vehicle

The service relating to remote access to the vehicle offers the possibility of remotely controlling certain vehicle functions and accessing vehicle information.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

- › Locking and unlocking
- › Last parking position
- › Vehicle status

Infotainment Online

The service package Infotainment Online extends infotainment to include online services.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

- › Online target import
- › Online traffic information.
- › Online System Update

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system type are supported.
- ✓ The set personal data protection level must allow the necessary data to be sent.
- ✓ There is the registered main user in the vehicle.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

Starting with the key

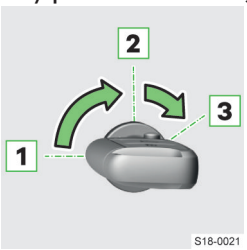
Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

› Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Key positions in the ignition switch



1 Ignition off
2 Ignition on
3 Starting the engine

Starting a vehicle with manual gearbox

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
› Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
› Turn the key to position 3.
› Release the key.

Starting a vehicle with automatic gearbox

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
› Turn the key to position 3.
› Release the key.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!

› At temperatures below -10°C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Turn the key to position 1.

On vehicles with automatic gearbox, the key can only be removed from the ignition switch when the selector lever is in the **P** position.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard

› If the vehicle is moving with the engine off, switch on the ignition.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

› Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Start at the push of a button

Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

› Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Operating conditions

✓ Vehicle key is inside the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

› Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on and off



› Press the starter button.

Starting a vehicle with manual gearbox

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
› Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
› Press the starter button.

Starting a vehicle with automatic gearbox

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
› Press the starter button.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!

› At temperatures below -10°C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.

› Press the starter button.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard

› If the vehicle is moving with the engine off, switch on the ignition.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

› Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of engine damage!

› Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start

› Switch off the ignition.

› Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.

› If the engine does not start, use the jump start cables with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle » *page 168* or seek the help of a specialist garage.

The engine does not start, the display shows a message regarding the immobilizer

› Use the other vehicle key.

› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

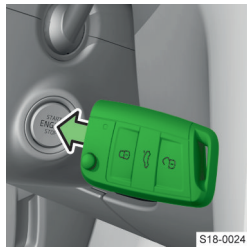
The key cannot be turned in the ignition

› Move the steering wheel back and forth while turning the key.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key



illuminates



› Press the starter button with the key.

› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button

› Hold the starter button or press twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped

The radiator fan can continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine is stopped. This is not a defect.

The engine makes noises after the cold start

The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a defect.

START STOP

Usage

The START-STOP system reduces polluting emissions and the CO_2emissions and saves fuel.

Functionality

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Vehicle with manual transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when stopping, when switching the gear lever into the neutral position, and when releasing the clutch pedal.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is pressed down.

Vehicle with automatic transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is actuated and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start takes place after releasing the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Ⓐ - Engine is switched off via the START-STOP system

- Engine is not switched off via the START-STOP system due to operating conditions that are not met

Display of detailed information in the infotainment screen

CAR > > *Vehicle status*

Or:

MENU > > > *Vehicle status*

Operating conditions

Some conditions are systemic and can neither be influenced nor recognised. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions:

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation

› Upon start-up of the engine.

› By selecting the driving mode Eco » *page 138, Operation*.

Deactivate/activate system

› Press the button.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol illuminates in the button .

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up

The system has detected that the engine is running.

Manual gearbox

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of engine damage!

› Shift into higher gear before reaching the red area of the rev counter scale.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of gearbox damage!

› Depress the clutch pedal all the way down.

› If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever.

Engaging reverse gear

› Stop the vehicle.

› Depress the clutch pedal completely.

› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.

› Push the gearshift lever down.

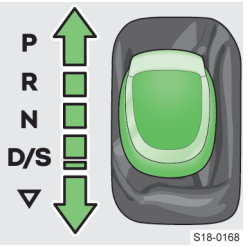
› Set this completely to the left.

› Wait briefly.

› Engage reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Lever positions



P **Parked vehicle**

The drive wheels are locked.

The **P** position can **only** be set when the vehicle is stationary.

R **Reverse gear**

The **R** position can **only** be set when the vehicle is stationary.

N **Neutral**

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S **Forward drive/sports programme**

The gear is changed automatically.

In the **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in the **D** mode.

▽ **Choosing between D and S (sprung position)**

Moving the selector lever out of the P or N position

lights up – the selector lever is locked



› Depress the brake while pressing the button on the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the vehicle moving forwards without warning.

› With the selector lever in the **D/S** or **R** position, or in manual shift mode, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Start the engine.
› Press the button in the selector lever and set it to the desired position.
› Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

Speeding up while driving (Kick-down)

› Fully depress the accelerator.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selector lever in the **D/S** position and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Press the button in the selector lever and set it to the **P** position.
› Turn off the engine.

Driving in neutral

If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to neutral position.

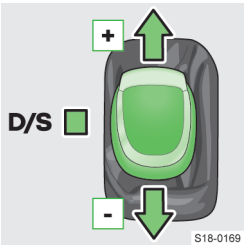
eco will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Requirements for driving in neutral position

✓ **D** mode is chosen.
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
✓ The vehicle speed is 20-130 km/h.
✓ There is no device connected to the trailer socket.

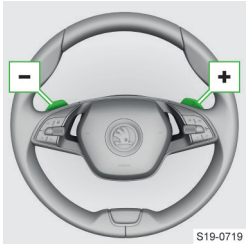
Manually switching gear with the selector lever

› To **turn on**, put the selector lever in the **D/S** position to the right (to the left for right-hand drive vehicles).
› To **turn off**, put the selector lever back in the **D/S** position.



\+ Changing up a gear
\- Changing down a gear

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel



\- Changing down a gear
\+ Changing up a gear

› To **switch on** the shift paddle, press - or +.
› To **turn off** the shift paddle, hold +.

If none of the shift paddles are pressed for a certain time, manual shift mode turns off automatically.

If the engine threatens to over-rev

› The gearbox automatically changes to the next higher gear.
› The transmission prevents changing to the next lower gear.

Troubleshooting

The selector lever cannot be moved out of position P in the normal way

› Manually unlock the selector lever » page 138.

Gearbox overheated

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and stop the engine.
› After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
› If the warning light does not go out, stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Gearbox impaired

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox in emergency mode

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
› Immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding a gearbox fault

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

› Adjust the selector lever between **D/S** and **R**. The vehicle will then start to rock and be easier to free.

Manually releasing an automatic gearbox.

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.



› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool into the gap at A.
› Carefully release and lift the gear shift cover.
› Push the foam insert away until the yellow release lever is visible.



› Using the vehicle key, press the release lever while pressing the button in the selector lever.
› Place the selector lever in the **N** position.

Vehicle driving mode

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

Information about the selected driving mode is displayed in the status bar in the Infotainment screen as well as in the digital instrument cluster.

Eco mode

Eco mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Normal mode

The Normal mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Sport mode

The Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Individual mode

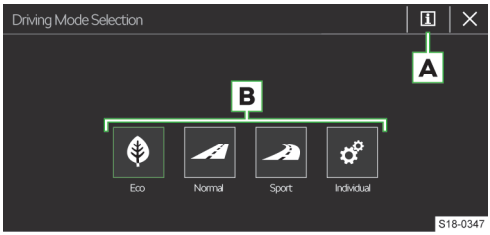
The Individual mode allows the individual configuration of certain vehicle systems.

Operation

Select driving mode

› Press the MODE button.

In the Infotainment, a driving mode menu appears.



A Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode/system settings for the selected Individual mode

B Driving mode menu

› Tap the relevant function surface B.

Or:

› Press the MODE button again.

After switching on the ignition, Normal mode is automatically selected.

Troubleshooting

Shock absorber Sport Chassis Preset faulty

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving

› Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

› Follow the gear recommendation in the display of the instrument cluster.
› Avoid full acceleration and too high speeds.
› Avoid engine idling during longer periods of stationary time.
› Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
› Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 177.
› Remove unnecessary ballast.
› Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
› Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
› Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Consumption-friendly driving

In the following situations, a small reduction in fuel consumption occurs. ECO lights up in the instrument cluster.

› Active cylinder management has temporarily disabled some cylinders in the engine (applies to certain engine types).
› A vehicle with automatic transmission rolls in neutral position.

Towing a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

ⓘ NOTICE

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Recommendations for using a trailer

› Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.
› For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.
› Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.
› A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.
› Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
› If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.
› Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.
› Select a lower gear before descending to also use the braking force of the engine.

Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

› Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
› Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permissible trailer weights

The information in the technical documentation of the vehicle takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
› Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible braked trailer weight (kg) [a]	Permissible unbraked trailer weight (kg)
1.0 l/66 kW TSI G-TEC	manual	-	-
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	manual	1,000	590
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	manual	1,200	600
	automatic	1,200	610
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	automatic	1,200	610
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	manual	1,250	620
	automatic	1250	620/630 [b]
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	manual	1,150	580
	automatic	1,150	600

[a] On gradients up to 12 %.

[b] Applies to vehicles that meet the EU6AP emission standard.

Towing eye and towing procedure

Conditions for towing

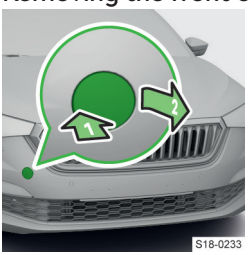
- ✓ The technical condition of the vehicle enables the towing process.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The shift lever is in the neutral position or the selector lever is in the **N** position.

Restriction

- › Towing speed max. 50 km/h
- › Towing distance max. 50 km

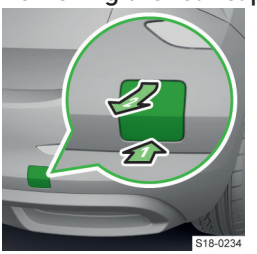
Towing lug

Removing the front cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Removing the rear cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Installing the towing eye



- › Screw in the towing eye.
- › Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
- › Tighten the towing eye.

After the towing process

- › Unscrew the towing eye.
- › Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

When towing, observe the country-specific legal regulations.

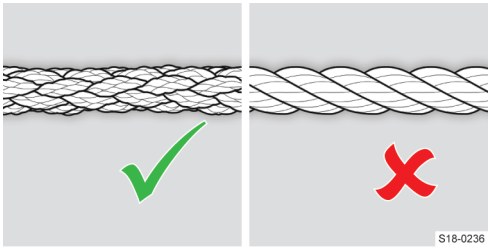
Towing takes practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the specific features of the towing process.

⚠ WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering do not work. In addition, there is a risk that the steering lock will engage.

› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

⚠ WARNING
› The tow rope must not be twisted.
› Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.


S18-0236

ⓘ NOTICE
› Always keep the tow rope taut during the towing procedure.

ⓘ NOTICE
Danger of gearbox damage!
› If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.
› Vehicles with automatic transmission must not be towed without the ignition switched on or with the rear axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?
› At the front towing eye
› At the rear towing eye
› On the ball bar of the factory-installed towing hitch

For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle
› Drive slowly and smoothly.
› Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position or the selector lever to the **N** position.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of
⚠ WARNING
Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER
Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!
› When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

⚠ DANGER
Danger of the brakes overheating!
› Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.
› If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Inspecting the brake fluid level
Test conditions
✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
✓ The engine is off

Checking


S18-0251

The fill level must be within the marked range.
› If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.
› Do not refill liquid.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this will be indicated in the instrument cluster by the illumination of (!) is displayed in the status bar. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the brake fluid level regularly directly at the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING
Danger of brake failure!
If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Specification
The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14 . This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing
Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING
Danger of brake failure!
If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level too low

illuminated

› Do not continue driving! Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system fault ABS

illuminates together with

› Do not continue driving! Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads

illuminated

› Drive with extra care to a specialist garage.

Reduced braking effect

Wet, icy, salt-encrusted or corroded brakes can cause reduced braking performance, vibration and noise.

› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

Prolonged parking and low brake loads contribute to corrosion on the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads.

The brake booster does not work when the engine is off

› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Handbrake

Operation

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

An insufficiently released parking brake will impair the function of the brake system.

› Fully release the parking brake before driving.

Applying


S18-0165

› Pull the lever up to the stop position.

The ad (P) lights up.

Loosening

› Pull the lever up a little and push in the lock button.

› Press and hold the lock button and pull the lever completely down.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid. ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

flashes – ESC is engaged

Traction control (ASR)

ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.

flashes – ASR is engaged

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the wheels of the driven axle lock, the MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)

EDS helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDS brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDS+)

XDS+ helps to keep the vehicle on the turn by effectively braking the wheels on the inner side of the turn.

Active steering assistance (DSR)

In difficult situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

HHC helps when starting off on uphill gradients by braking the vehicle for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The gradient is at least 5%.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-collision brake (MCB)

MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions

- ✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. As the trailer begins to lurch, TSA stabilizes the trailer by slowing down the individual vehicle wheels.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The hitch was supplied from the factory or purchased from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
- ✓ ASR is activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR

In Infotainment, in the following menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

When deactivated, lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out on renewed activation.

Deactivating the ASR may be helpful in the following situations:

› Driving with snow chains
› Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground

› Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

Troubleshooting

ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system

illuminates

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the indicator light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ABS faulty

illuminates

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS faulty

illuminates together with

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminates – safety distance too small

or illuminates – warning in case of collision

Automatic braking if there is a risk of a collision

If there is a risk of a collision, the following symbol is illuminated as a warning or from the isolation box. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 30 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

Automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by a steering intervention.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal cannot be operated by using the pedal as normal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles.

Operating conditions

✓ The ASR is activated.

✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› About 30 seconds after starting (the indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster)

› When driving around a sharp bend

› When there is an ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster display

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

› Select the *Front Assist* item.

Activating/deactivating in the Infotainment system

In the menu **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > .

Indication of system deactivation on the instrument cluster display

illuminates together with ⚠

or:

illuminates together with ⚠

Front Assist deactivate when handling the vehicle on a freight train, ferry, etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is not available

illuminates together with ⚠

Or:

illuminates together with ⚠

› Clean the front radar sensor.

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.

› If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

There was an unfounded warning or system intervention

› Clean the front radar sensor.

› If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Front Assist

Front Assist - activating
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-front-assist

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing or lengthwise moving pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

or lights up – danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h

The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-60 km/h

The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Front Assist is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is 5-60 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Applies to the digital instrument cluster.

illuminates – the cruise control is activated.

illuminates – the cruise control is active
flashing – the set threshold limit has been exceeded

When cruise control starts, the set threshold limit is displayed.

Applies to the analogue instrument cluster.

illuminates – the cruise control is activated.

illuminates together with – cruise control is active
When cruise control starts, is highlighted and the set threshold limit is displayed.

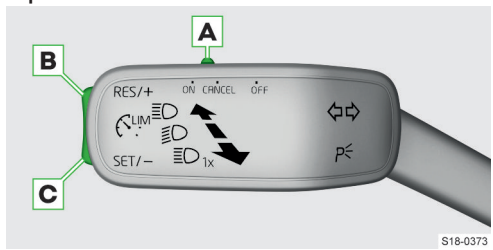
flashing – the set threshold limit has been exceeded

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

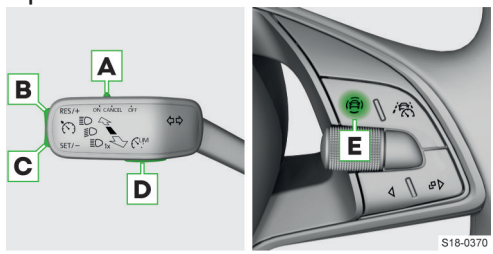
Operation

Option without cruise control



- A **ON** Activating the limiter (regulation not in progress)
  OFF Deactivating the limiter
  CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)
- B **RES/+** Resuming regulation [1] / Increasing the limit
- C **SET/-** Starting regulating current speed / Decreasing the limit

Option with cruise control



- A **ON** Activating cruise control (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter)

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

To **activate the speed limiter**, press the D or E button.

OFF Deactivating the limiter

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming regulation [1] / Increasing the limit

C **SET/-** Starting regulating current speed / Decreasing the limit

D Depending on vehicle equipment:

Switching between the cruise control and the speed limiter

Or:

Displaying the assist systems menu – switch between cruise control and speed limiter

Switching to cruise control interrupts the regulation.

E Displaying the assist systems menu – switch between cruise control and speed limiter.

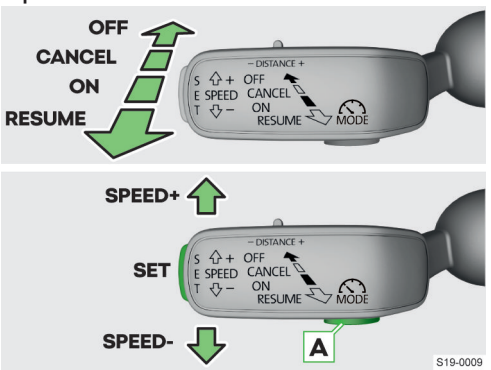
Switching to cruise control interrupts the regulation.

Changing the speed limit using the B button and C

Pressing in **1 km/h** increments

Holding in **10 km/h** increments

Option with ACC



ON Activating ACC (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter). To activate the speed limiter, press the A button.

RESUME Resuming control [1] / Increasing the limit in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivating the limiter

SPEED + Increasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SPEED – Decreasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

A Switching between the ACC and speed limiter (switching to cruise control interrupts the regulation).

Exceeding the limit

› Depress the accelerator pedal **all the way down**.

When you slow down below the set limit, the control will continue.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter faulty

LIM illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the accelerator pedal having to be operated.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!

› Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Applies to the digital instrument cluster.

Illuminated – the cruise control system is activated

Illuminated – cruise control is active

When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Applies to the analogue instrument cluster.

Illuminated – the cruise control system is activated

illuminates along with – cruise control is active

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

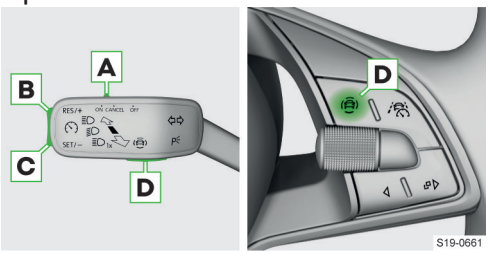
When cruise control starts, is highlighted and the set speed is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

Operation

Operation with the lever



A **ON** Activating the cruise control (no cruise control is in operation)

OFF Deactivating the cruise control

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming the cruise control [1] / Increasing speed limit

C **SET/-** Starting the cruise control with current speed / Reducing speed limit

D Displaying the assist systems menu – switch between cruise control and speed limiter

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

› After the brake pedal is depressed

› After intervention ESC

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system faulty

illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Functionality

Speed control ACC

ACC maintains the set speed. If your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front of you, the ACC will automatically maintain the set distance.

Maintaining the set speed and distance is referred to as **control**.

⚠ WARNING

ACC does not react to objects moving across the road or in the opposite direction.

ACC is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

pACC Predictive Adaptive Cruise control

pACC is an extension system of ACC.

pACC adjusts speed according to detected speed limits and road conditions, such as curves, junctions or roundabouts.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data

› Traffic sign recognition

› Sensors, radars and cameras

⚠ WARNING

pACC does not react to level crossings.

Speed range

ACC allows you to set the speed between 30 – 160 or 30 – 210 km/h depending on the vehicle equipment.

If you activate the control on a car with an automatic gearbox at a speed lower than 30 km/h, the speed is automatically increased to 30 km/h or regulated according to the speed of the car in front of you.

Level of distance

You can set the distance to the car in front of you in five different levels.

⚠ WARNING

› Keep the minimum distance in accordance with the laws in force in your country.

START-STOP system

A vehicle with an automatic gearbox can use ACC to slow to a stop and start again. If the stop is longer, the display will instruct you to press the brake pedal.

---

[1] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

› Keep the brake pedal depressed until the car in front of you starts moving.

If you do not depress the brake pedal, the control is interrupted.

Overtaking

If your vehicle crosses into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle in front of you, ACC will accelerate to the set speed.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

illuminated – ACC is active

Depending on vehicle equipment:

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

or:

illuminates together with
– cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control is activated, the set speed is displayed.

illuminated – ACC is not braking sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed in accordance with the permitted speed limit

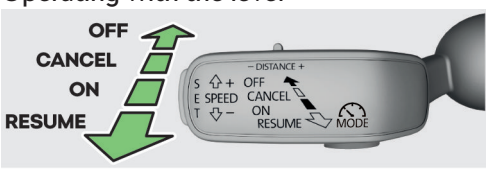
illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching roundabout.

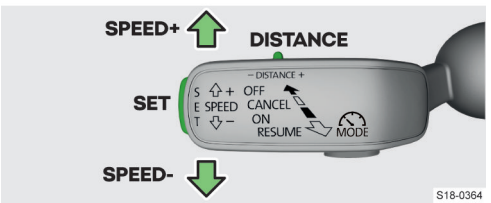
illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching junction

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the progress of the journey

Operation

Operating with the lever





ON Activate ACC (control deactivated)

RESUME Start or resume control/Increase speed in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)

CANCEL Stop control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivate ACC

SPEED + Increase speed in steps of 10 km/h

SPEED – Reduce speed in steps of 10 km/h

DISTANCE Set distance level

SET Start control/Reduce speed in steps of 1 km/h

Starting control with the current speed

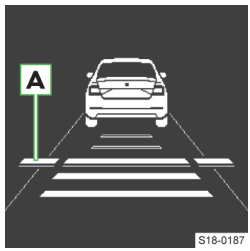
› Tap on **SET**.

Or:

› If no speed is saved, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Set distance level

› Move the **DISTANCE** switch to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



Line A appears in the display, indicating the change in distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

For temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle accelerates and control is temporarily interrupted. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is resumed.

Interrupting cruise control

› After pressing the brake pedal while driving
› By operating the clutch pedal for a long time
› After an ESC intervention
› After deactivation of the ASR

Resuming control

› If a speed is stored, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle is controlled at the set speed. The set speed is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Function restriction

Do not use the ACC in the following cases:

› The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
› The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
› When the driving lane is too narrow.
› The vehicle drives through a construction site.

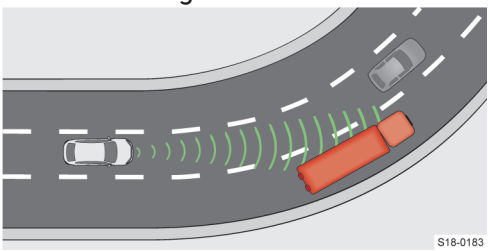
⚠ WARNING

› Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

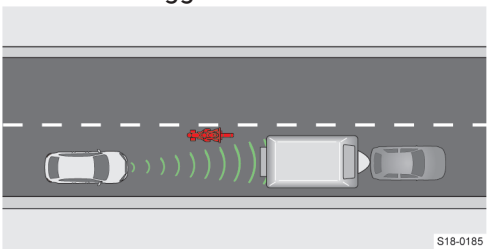
If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

When cornering



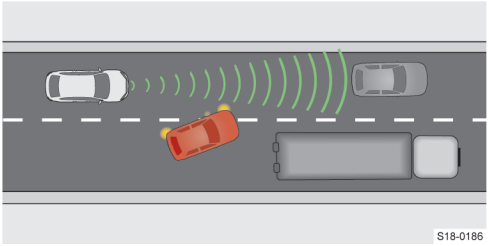
When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow or staggered vehicle



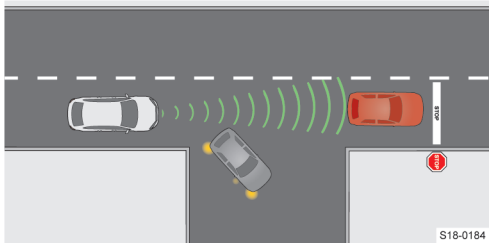
ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

Lane change by another vehicle



A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be possibly recognized by the ACC in time.

Stationary vehicle



Applies to vehicles with the Travel Assist system.

If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC **may not possibly respond** to the stationary vehicle.

Applies to vehicles not having the Travel Assist system:

If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC will **not respond** to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special bodies

A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting

In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

› *Driving mode:* – setting the vehicle acceleration when driving with ACC (in vehicles with a selection of driving modes, this setting is made by » page 138)
› *Last selected distance* – turning on/off of the last selected distance level
› *Distance:* – setting the default distance from the vehicle in front of you
› *Prediction of the course of the journey* – switching cruise control on/off based on the course of the journey (e.g. slowing down before a corner)
› *Prediction of the speed limit* – switching cruise control on/off in accordance with the speed limit

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop the engine and start again.
› If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.

› If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Adaptive Cruise Control ACC

ACC - setting

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-acc

Lane Assist

Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. It is based on the boundaries of a lane. These may include lane markings, road edges or objects such as curbs or possibly traffic cones.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

Vehicles without the Side Assist system: No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

Vehicles with the Side Assist system: When changing lanes, if Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle using the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover, then the system intervenes even if the turn signal is switched on.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up – System is activated and ready to intervene

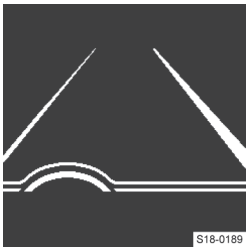
lights up – System is activated and ready to intervene

lights up – System intervenes

lights up – System intervenes

Display

Display example in black and white display.



Lane boundary highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

In the coloured display, the lines are highlighted in colour.

Warning through steering wheel vibrations

The steering wheel vibrations are triggered in the following situations:

› The system is not able to keep the vehicle within the lane.
› *Vehicles without the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on.
› *Vehicles with the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on. If Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle using the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover, then a steering wheel vibration is triggered even when the turn signal is switched off.
› Correct the steering movement in the event of vibrations.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.
✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
› The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
› When the driving lane is too narrow.
› The vehicle drives through a construction site.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Lane Assist is activated automatically **always** when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster display

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
› Select the *Lane Assist* item.

Activating/deactivating in the Infotainment system

In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

Activating/deactivating the steering wheel vibrations

In the **MENU** > > *All assist systems* > menu.

After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
› Stop the engine and restart again after a short time.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Lane Assist Lane Assist

Lane Assist - activating
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-lane-assist

Travel Assist

Use

Travel Assist helps keep the vehicle in its lane while regulating its speed.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses the Lane Assist and ACC functions.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
› Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to take over driving.
› Follow the instructions in the description of the Lane Assist and ACC functions.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

illuminated – the system is activated, speed control and adaptive lane guidance are in progress

Illuminated – the system is activated, speed control is in progress

illuminated – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is in progress

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

Adaptive lane guidance

This function maintains the driver's selected position within the lane.

Operating conditions

✓ ACC is activated.
✓ Driving speed is max. 210 km/h.
✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.
✓ On a vehicle with manual gears, the driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Function restriction

Travel Assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
› The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
› When the driving lane is too narrow.

In addition to these restrictions, also note the ACC restrictions *» page 148*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activating

› Put the ACC selector lever to **RESUME** position.

Or:

› Press **SET** on the ACC control lever.

The current speed control and adaptive lane guidance are activated.

Switching between Travel Assist and ACC

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
› Select the required menu in the instrument panel.

After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Deactivation

› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Put the ACC selector lever to **CANCEL** position or **OFF** » page 148.

Other settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Follow the troubleshooting instructions for Lane Assist » page 151 and ACC » page 149.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

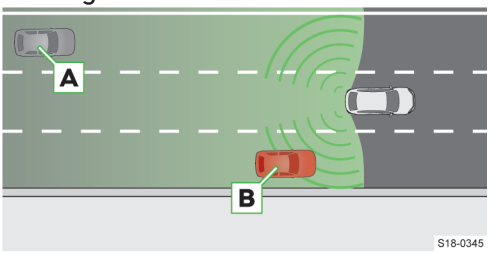
The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area both beside and behind the vehicle.

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the vehicle side, where the vehicle is recognized.

Driving situations in which a system warning occurs



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle A. The faster vehicle A approaches, the sooner the warning is given by the indicator light.

Vehicle B is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

Indicator light

■ **illuminates** – There is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashes** – There is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist, the indicator light will also flash if your vehicle crosses the lane markings in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the lane marking between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases:

› The vehicle is driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
› The vehicle is taking a turn.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of a vehicle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› A very fast approaching vehicle.
› The vehicle is driving through a sharp bend or a roundabout.

Settings

In the instrument cluster display

In the menu *Assist systems*.

In Infotainment

In the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Lane change system Side Assist

Side Assist - activating
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-side-assist

Traffic Sign Recognition

Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

⚠ WARNING

The following always has priority over the traffic signs shown in the display:

› Traffic signs in the traveled route section
› A speed limit stipulated by law, which is not implemented by any traffic signs in the route section traveled through

Functionality

Displayed road signs

› Speed limits
› Overtaking prohibited
› Driving bans – one-way traffic
› Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions

Towing a trailer

If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

Driving on roads without speed limits

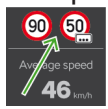
If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs ⓘ will appear in the display.

Example of road sign display





Example of additional characters



Example of several simultaneously recognised road signs.

ⓘ At the same time, a red display regarding the speed limit appears in the speedometer.

Speed units

The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the ㉚ display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
› The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The vehicle is moving at high speed.
› The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
› The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
› The navigation map documents are not up-to-date or not available.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assistance systems* > 🔧.

■ *Traffic Sign Recognition*
  › *Show in instrument cluster* – Activation/deactivation of the additional road signs in the display of the instrument cluster
  › *Speed warning:* – Configures a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
  › *Warning at over* – Increases the speed limit for the warning when exceeding the permitted speed
■ *Trailer detection*
  › *Show road signs relevant to trailers* Activation/deactivation of the display of road signs relevant to trailers
  › *Tap on maximum speed for trailers* – Setting the speed limits for trailer operation

Video – Dynamic Road Sign Display

Dynamic Road Sign Display – how it works
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-traffic-sign-recognition

Crew Protect Assist

Usage

The system of proactive occupant protection triggers measures to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, it triggers the following safety measures:

› Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
› The front seat belts are tightened on the body.

ⓘ The system response depends on the selected driving mode.

Risk of frontal impact

Applies to vehicles with the Front Assist system.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger of a frontal impact.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› When deactivated in the infotainment in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assistance systems* > 🚗
› When deactivating the ASR or activating the ESC Sport
› When reversing
› If there is a malfunction in the ESC, reversible seat belt or airbag system
› If there is a malfunction or limitation of the Front Assist system

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assistance systems* > 🚗.

Troubleshooting

Crew Protect Assist faulty

illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver Alert

Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the following symbol lights up ☕ from the isolation box.

⚠ WARNING

There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

› The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off
› The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened
› The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes

ⓘ In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

Operating conditions

✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assistance systems* > ☕.

Video - Fatigue detection Driver Alert

Driver Alert - activating
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-scala-driver-alert

Park Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

When an obstacle is detected, a graphic warning is displayed on the Infotainment system display and an acoustic signal sounds.

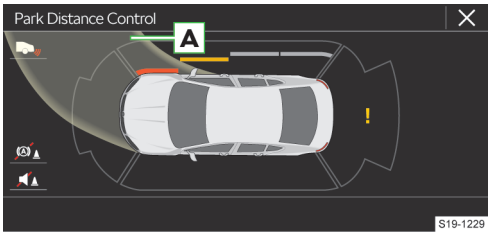
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance decreases. At a distance of less than 30 cm, an uninterrupted tone is emitted.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 8 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

The automatic braking can be activated and deactivated on the Infotainment system display.

Display

The range of scanned areas varies depending on the vehicle's equipment.



A The driving path that the vehicle will be travelling with the current steering wheel position

Switching off/on the audible alarm

One-off deactivation/activation of automatic braking

Switching to reversing camera view

! System fault

■ Obstacle at a distance smaller than 30 centimetres

■ Obstacle at a distance greater than 30 centimetres

□ Obstacle outside the driving path

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Turn on/turn off

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Automatic switch-on during forward travel

When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Automatic switch off

The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an obstacle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.

› The detected obstacles are moving.

› Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.

› It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The system settings are made in the infotainment system in the following menu:

CAR > > P

Or:

MENU > > > P

Troubleshooting

After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, the symbol P flashes in the button

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen

› Move the vehicle a few meters forwards or backwards.

› If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

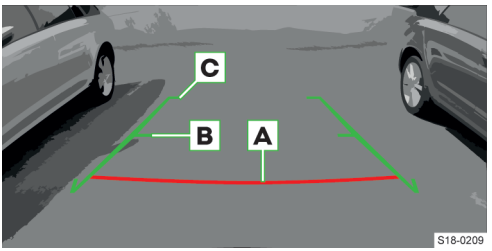
Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically when the rear window is washed.

Orientation lines and function surfaces

Orientation lines



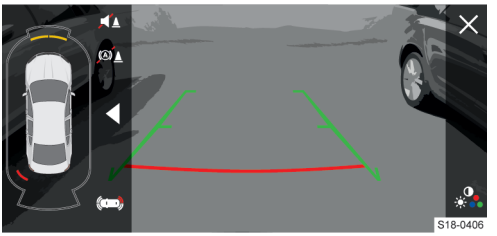
A Distance about 40 cm

B Distance about 100 cm

C Distance about 200 cm

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



Setting the brightness, contrast and colour of the display

× Turning off displaying the area behind the vehicle

Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

One-off deactivation/activation of automatic braking

◀/▶ Switching the parking aid preview off/on

Full parking aid display

Operating conditions

✓ Boot lid closed

✓ Ignition on

✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed on the screen.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

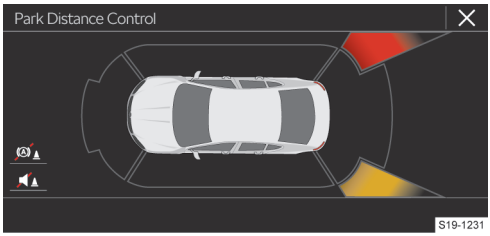


When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

Vehicle with Parking Aid

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. When reversing, a continuous tone sounds at the same time.



■ Vehicle in collision area - danger of collision!

■ Approaching vehicle

Vehicle without Parking Aid

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, the a warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display, indicating to the driver to monitor the traffic behind. At the same time, an acoustic signal sounds.

Operating conditions

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster display

In the menu *Assist systems*.

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment

In the following menu:

CAR > > P

Or:

MENU > > > P

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant

Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.

✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.

✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Turn on/turn off

› Press the P button.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the button P.

Select the lane side for the parking procedure

The system automatically searches for a suitable parking space on the passenger side.

› Press the driver's side indicator to find a parking space on this side of the road.

Operation while searching for a parking space

› Drive past a number of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.

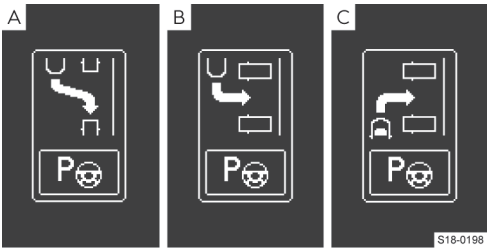
› To search for a parking space across the road, drive slower than 20 km/h.

› To search for a parking space along the road, drive slower than 40 km/h.

If the symbol (km/h) appears in the display, reduce the driving speed. If the system finds a parking space, the display will show the recommended parking mode.

Changing the parking mode

If a suitable parking space is found, the following Park modes can be shown in the display.



A Park backwards longitudinally

B Park backwards crosswise

C Park forwards across

The parking mode can be changed by pressing the button P.

Press the button again P and the system is switched off.

› To return to the original recommended parking mode, press the button P again.

Before the parking process

› If a suitable parking space is found, stop and drive backwards or forwards as indicated by the arrow in the display.

› When a steering intervention message is displayed, release the steering wheel. The steering operation is taken over by the system.

Parking operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.

› Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.

› Observe the area around the vehicle and drive backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.

› As soon as the symbol appears in the display and an audible signal sounds, stop the vehicle. The steering wheel is taken over accordingly. The symbol goes out.

› Travel backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.

As soon as the parking process is completed, the corresponding message is displayed and an audible signal sounds.

The parking procedure can be ended at any time by pressing the button P.

i When partially parked in a suitable transverse parking space forward, press button P. The parking process is completed by the system.

Exiting a parking space

› Press the P button.

› Follow the instructions on the screen.

Automatic speed reduction

If a speed of 7 km/h is exceeded during the parking process, the system will reduce the speed.

Upon the speed being exceeded by 7 km/h a second time, the parking process is terminated.

Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the Park Assist to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases:

› The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.

› Snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.

› If the system offers an inappropriate parking space for parking.

› The overhang angle for parking in the parking space is too large.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

Engine, exhaust system and fuel

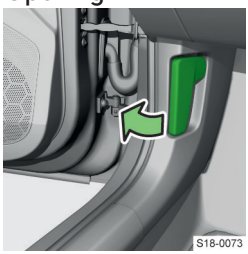
Bonnet

Opening the bonnet

Before opening

› Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
› Keep away from the engine compartment.

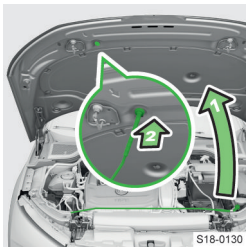
Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.



› Release the lock.



› Open the bonnet.
› Remove the bonnet stay from the holder and insert the end of the stay into the opening in the bonnet.

Closing

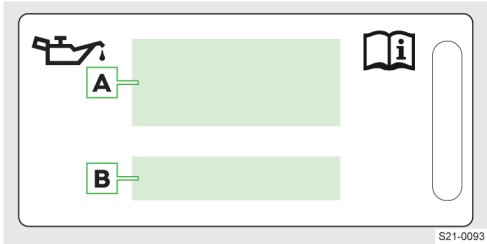
› Lift the bonnet.
› Unhook the bonnet stay and insert it into the holder.
› Fold the bonnet down and release it from a height of 20 cm.
› Check that the bonnet is closed.

NOTICE

› Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.
› Open and close the flap again.

Engine oil

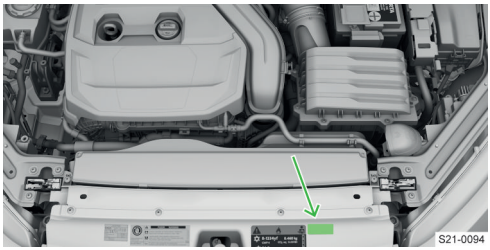
Specification



Engine oil sticker

A Engine oil specifications
B Engine oil viscosity

The engine oil sticker is located in the front of the engine compartment.



Applies to vehicles with an engine oil sticker:

If the engine oil needs to be topped up, use the oil listed on the sticker in the front of the engine compartment.

Applies to vehicles without an engine oil sticker:

You can obtain information about the engine oil specification prescribed for your vehicle from a specialist garage. If the engine oil needs to be topped up, use this oil.

When using the prescribed engine oil, the engine oil level can be adjusted as often as required.

In an emergency

If engine oil of the prescribed specification is not available, engine oil with following specifications can be topped up once up to **max. 0.5 l** in an emergency until the next regular oil change:

- **Vehicles with petrol engine**: VW 504 00, ACEA C3 and API SP, viscosity 0W-30
- **Natural gas vehicles**: VW 504 00, ACEA C3 and API SP, viscosity 0W-30

ŠKODA AUTO recommends that **oil change** subsequently be carried out by a specialist company » *page 8*.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

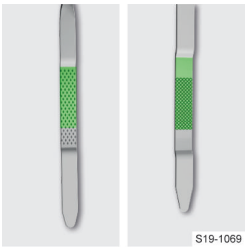
- Check the oil level at regular intervals.

Test conditions

- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
- ✓ The parked engine is warm

Checking the level

- Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.
- Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
- Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.
- Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



- The oil level must be within the marked range.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- The oil level must not be outside the marked range.
- If the oil level is **below** the marked area, stop driving, switch off the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is **above** the marked area, stop driving, switch off the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- Do not use any oil additives.

Refilling

- Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
- Top up the oil to the correct specification » *page 159* in 0.5 litre portions.
- Check the oil level.
- Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

ⓘ NOTICE

ŠKODA AUTO recommends use of approved engine oils in accordance with the relevant VW standard. Use of engine oils that do not comply with this regulation could damage the engine.

ⓘ ŠKODA AUTO recommends engine oils from the product range of ŠKODA original parts.

Changing

ŠKODA AUTO recommends that **oil change** be carried out by a specialist company » *page 8*.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

or

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

- Check the engine oil level » *page 160*.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

- Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding required engine oil top up

- Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required » *page 160*.

Engine oil level too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the need to reduce the engine oil level

- Check the engine oil level » *page 160*.

The oil level is too high:

- Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
- Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor impaired

illuminates together with ⚠

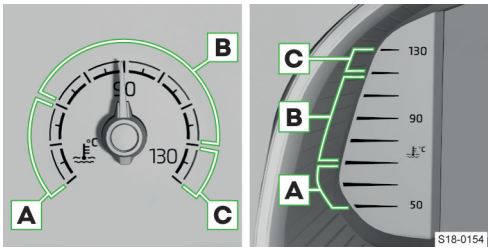
or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the engine oil sensor

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant

Coolant temperature gauge



A Low temperature
› Avoid high engine speed.
B Operating temperature
C High temperature

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
✓ The engine is turned off and cooled

Checking the level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the engine compartment!
› Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

⚠ NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.
› Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!
The cooling system is pressurised.
› Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.
› Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
› Refill with coolant of the correct specification.
› Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

To refill the coolant additive use G12evo (TL 774 L).

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level is too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning the required coolant check

› Check the coolant level » page 161.

If the coolant level is OK:

› Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » page 169, Replacing a fuse.

If the fuse is OK but the indicator light lights up again:

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Report regarding the engine overheating

› Stop driving.
› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Drive on after the indicator light goes out.

Engine fault

illuminates together with ⚠

or

 illuminates together with

› Stop driving!

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

› Top up with distilled or demineralised water.

› Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

› Stop driving.

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Fault in the engine control system

EPC illuminated

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Particle filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particle filter

 illuminates together with

or

 illuminates together with

› Clean the filter » *page 162*.

ⓘ When the indicator light is on, it must be assumed that fuel consumption will be higher, engine power will be reduced, and the START-STOP function will not be available.

Filter cleaning

Conditions for cleaning

✓ The engine is warm.

✓ For vehicles with manual transmission, observe the gear recommendation shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

Procedure for vehicles with petrol engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h at engine speeds between 3000-5000 rpm.

› Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle roll with the gear engaged for a few seconds.

› Repeat this procedure several times.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off.  or .

If the indicator light  or  does not go off within 30 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exhaust control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system faulty

 illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Radiator blinds

Usage

The radiator blinds reduce emissions harmful to the environment and CO_2-Emissions and saving fuel.

Troubleshooting

If the display of the instrument cluster shows a message relating to the function restriction of the blinds, the maximum speed of the vehicle is limited to 160 km/h.

The cause may be ice or snow in the area around the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

› Should the impairment not be due to ice or snow, assistance from a specialist should be sought.

Fuel filler flap

Opening the fuel filler flap



› Press the flap and open it.

Petrol

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never empty the fuel tank completely!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards

Petrol must comply with European standard EN 228 (in Russia, GOST 32513-2013).

Only use **unleaded petrol** that contains **max** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

ⓘ We recommend using petrol with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Octane number

Use the petrol with the octane number prescribed for your vehicle.

Petrol with an octane number that is one **higher** than the one prescribed for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine.
› Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
› Do not use petrol with an octane number that **lower** than **91**!

Prescribed petrol 95 / min. 92 or 93 RON / ROZ

We recommend using petrol **95** ROZ.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or. **93** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** RON petrol may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ

Use min. **95** ROZ petrol.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Prescribed petrol 98 / (95) RON / ROZ

We recommend using petrol **98** ROZ.

95 RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additive

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

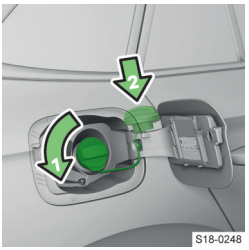
› Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead, and do not use, for example, any LRP-petrol - lead replacement petrol.
› Do not add any additional additives to the petrol in accordance with EN 228.
› If petrol is not used in accordance with EN 228, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked
✓ Ignition off

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
› Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
› Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
› Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.

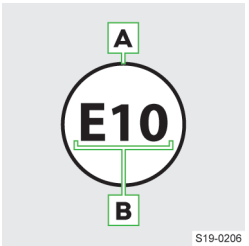
Troubleshooting

If fuel other than unleaded petrol has been used as per standards applicable to your vehicle

› Neither start the engine nor switch on the ignition.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Unleaded petrol
B Organic share as a percentage

Example of a vehicle data sticker

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 50 litres, including a reserve of approx. 7 litres.

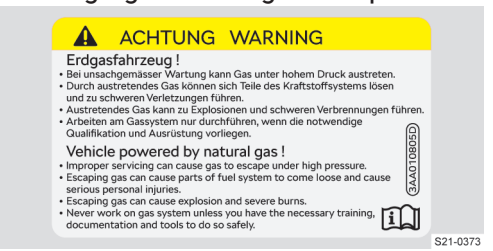
For natural gas vehicles, the content of the petrol tank is approximately 9 litres.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

CNG (compressed natural gas)

What you should be mindful of

Warning sign in the engine compartment



⚠ WARNING

Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death, explosion or fire!
› Do not ignore the smell of gas in the vehicle or when refuelling.
› The natural gas tanks in the vehicle must not be exposed to undesirable heat sources.
› Do not enter the vehicle when refuelling with natural gas. Electrostatic discharges may occur when entering the vehicle. If the fuelling nozzle of the refuelling system is subsequently touched, sparks may form and a fire may break out.

⚠ WARNING

Touching the floor of the vehicle or an accident may damage the natural gas containers. If damaged natural gas tanks are refuelled, they can burst and cause serious or fatal injuries!
› Ensure a gas system test is carried out immediately by a specialist company.
› Do not refuel using natural gas until a gas system test has been carried out.

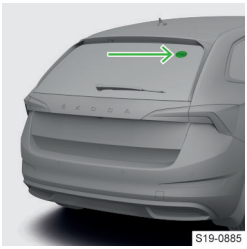
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
› No LNG (Liquefied Natural Gas), LPG (Liquefied Petroleum Gas) and do not use hythane (mixture of hydrogen and methane).

Regulations



Variants of the CNG sticker in natural gas vehicles .



Position of the sticker

Regular gas system checks

On natural gas-powered vehicles regular gas system checks must be carried out at a specialist workshop. The vehicle operator is responsible for ensuring these tests are carried out properly.

For new cars, this is after 4 years and then every 2 years

Valid for Germany, Austria and Sweden: For a new vehicle after 3 years and thereafter every 2 years

- Check the gas system for leaks and carry out an examination of gas containers
- Check the filler cap
- Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes, and clean sealing ring if necessary

Lifetime of the containers

The lifetime of the natural gas containers is max. 20 years.

- Ensure the gas tanks are replaced at the appropriate time.

Indicates the natural gas system test.

illuminates

Notification regarding the remaining days until the natural gas system is checked

- Ensure the test is carried out by a specialist company.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the natural gas system is not tested by the due date, the natural gas drive will not be available in your vehicle.

Functionality

A natural gas vehicle also has a petrol engine » page 163,

Natural gas operation display

Depending on the type of display, the display can be as follows:

illuminates

Or

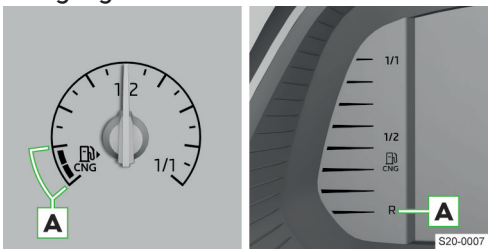
illuminates

Automatically switching over from natural gas mode to petrol mode

The vehicle automatically switches from natural gas to petrol, for example, if the following situations occur.

- With an empty natural gas tank or insufficient pressure in the tank.
- After natural gas refuelling - the fuel system of the vehicle determines the quality of natural gas.
- The outside air temperature is very low.

Gas gauge



A The natural gas supply has reached the reserve area.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of remaining in traffic.

- After the indicator light illuminates Fill up with petrol as soon as possible.
- **Never fully empty the petrol tank.**
- Track the range with natural gas in the drive data menu item » page 66.
- Plan to fill up with natural gas in good time.

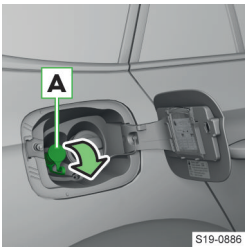
ⓘ Every six months, to ensure the correct functioning of the fuel system, it is recommended that the fuel tank for petrol should be run down until the warning light comes on. run empty.

Requirements for refuelling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked
- ✓ Ignition off

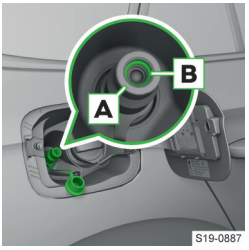
Refilling

- Open the tank flap.



› Remove the cap A from the natural gas filler neck.
› Plug the coupling of the refuelling system onto the filler neck and start refuelling with natural gas.

The refuelling system stops the refuelling process automatically when the tank is full.



› After releasing the coupling of the refuelling system, check whether the sealing ring B is stuck in the filler neck A.
› If the sealing ring has slipped on the connector, reinsert it into the filler neck.
› Place the cap on the filler neck.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.

ⓘ The natural gas refuelling systems have an overfill protection with a dependence to the outdoor temperature. With very high outside temperatures, it may not be possible to fully refuel the natural gas tank.

ⓘ If the car is parked directly after a refuelling operation, on restart the pointer of the gas gauge may not show exactly the same level as immediately after the filling process. This is not a leak in the system, but a reduction in pressure due to the cooling of the gas in the natural gas container after refuelling.

Troubleshooting

Unknown refuelling system

Natural gas refuelling may vary from station to station. If refuelling with natural gas at a station is unfamiliar to you, get someone to instruct you or allow the fuelling operation to be carried out by the station staff.

Gas leakage

If a gas leak is suspected (perceptible odour), proceed as follows.

› Stop the vehicle.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.
› Open doors and the boot lid to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
› Do not continue to drive if the odour persists.
› If it is not possible to drive a vehicle with a gas leak out of an enclosed area (e.g. tunnel, underpass, garage, ferry etc.), call the emergency services immediately.
› Ensure a gas system test is carried out immediately by a specialist company.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



CNG (compressed natural gas)

The fuel tank is designed for around 13.8 kg of CNG.

12 volt vehicle battery and fuses

12 volt vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12-volt vehicle battery

Wear safety goggles!

The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.

Keep fire, sparks and open light away from the 12 volt vehicle battery! Do not smoke!

When charging the 12 volt vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!

Keep children away from the 12 volt vehicle battery!

Note the instructions in the owner's manual!

Functionality – Protection against discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

Possible causes for the discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

- Worn 12 volt vehicle battery
- Frequent short journeys
- Low temperatures
- Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

Automatic system-related discharge protection measure with regard to the 12 volt vehicle battery

- Increasing the engine idling speed
- Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power

Recommended measure to be taken when vehicle is stationary for more than three weeks

- Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the 12 volt vehicle battery.

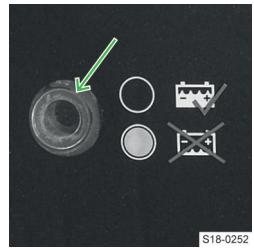
Checking and charging the 12 volt vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The condition of the 12 volt vehicle battery is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12 volt vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



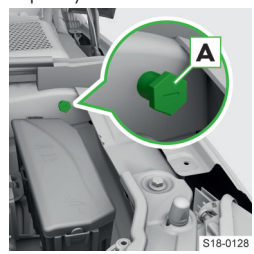
- Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.
- Black colour – the acid level is OK.
- Colourless or pale yellow colour – acid level is too low, the 12 volt vehicle battery must be replaced.

Requirements for charging a 12 volt vehicle battery

- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Power consumers switched off

12 volt vehicle battery charging

To charge the 12 volt vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



Earth point

- Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ terminal of the 12 volt vehicle battery.
- Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point A.
- Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
- After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
- Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12 volt vehicle battery.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

› During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
› Never charge a frozen or thawed 12 volt vehicle battery.
› Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the 12 volt vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE
A flat 12 volt vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

The 12 volt vehicle battery does not charge while the engine is running


or illuminates
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine fault


or illuminates
› Stop driving!
› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting and replacing

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of fire!
› Do not mix up the connection cables.

Disconnecting

› Close the electric boot lid, all windows and the electric sunblind.
› Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.
› Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

Connecting

› Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

After switching on the ignition, the indicator lights light up from the isolation box.

› If, after a short distance, one of the above-mentioned indicator lights does not go out, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Operate these vehicle functions after disconnecting and connecting the 12 volt vehicle battery

› Clock setting » page 64.
› Window operation » page 34.
› Sunblind » page 34.

Changing

The new 12 volt vehicle battery must have the same parameters as the original battery. Have the replacement carried out only by a specialist garage.

Using the jump-starting cable

Usage

With the help of jump start cables, a vehicle with a discharged or defective 12-volt vehicle battery can be started using the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING
Risk of explosion and chemical burns!
› Do not jump start with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  › The discharged 12 volt vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12 volt vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.
  › The acid level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low » page 167.

Use jump leads with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the 12 volt charging vehicle battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

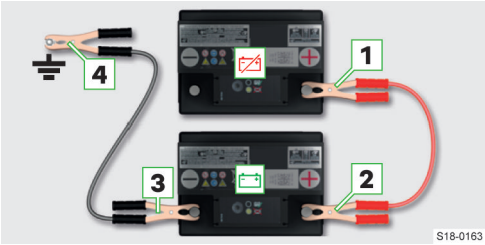
Use another vehicle's 12 volt vehicle battery to operate the vehicle

⚠ WARNING
Risk of injury! Danger of damage to vehicle!
› Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

ⓘ NOTICE
Short circuit!
› The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
› The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12 volt vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
› The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connect the jump start cable

› Switch off the ignition.
› Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



discharged 12 volt vehicle battery

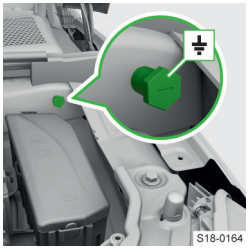
current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

1 ⊕-pole of the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery

2 ⊕-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

3 ⊖-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery (or earth point)

4 ⏚ Earth point of the vehicle with discharged 12 volt vehicle battery



Earth point

Start the engine

› Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with combustion engine)

Or:

› Switch on the electric drive of the vehicle supplying power (applies to vehicles with an electric motor).

› Start up the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

› If the engine of the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cable

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

› Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.

› Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.

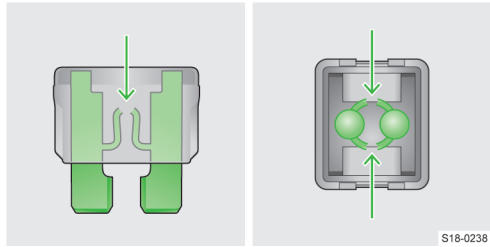
› We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.

› If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.



Blown fuse

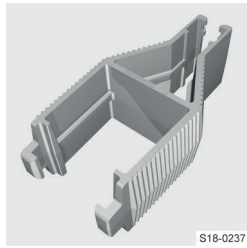
Conditions for replacing a fuse

✓ Ignition key removed (vehicle without starter button)

✓ Ignition switched off and driver's door open (vehicle with starter button)

✓ All consumers switched off

Replacing a fuse



› Replace the fuse with the clamp located on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.

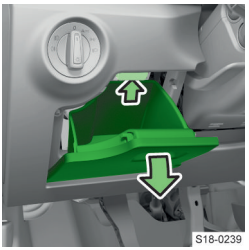
› Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

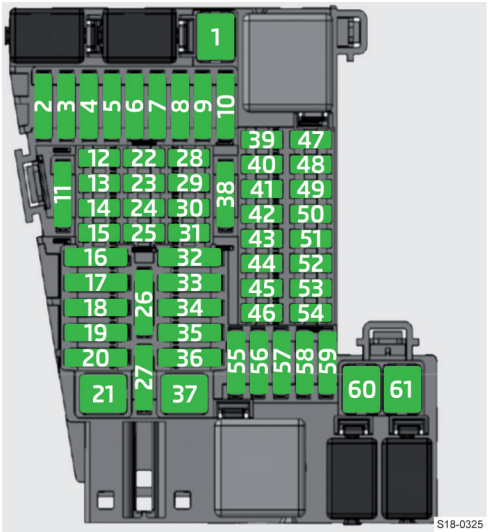
Access to the fuses

› Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.



› Press the button and open the tray.
› Pull the tray out by pulling it towards you.
› Change the fuse.
› Insert and close the tray at the original location.

Fuses overview



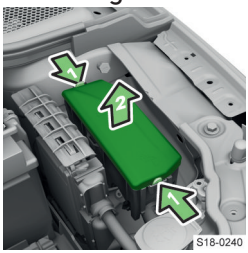
Fuse number	Consumer
1	Tow hitch
2	LED-headlights - left side
3	Music amplifier
4	Headlamp cleaning system
5	Sliding/tilting roof
6	Central locking, windscreen washer, rear window wiper
7	Seat heating - rear
8	Climatronic
9	LED-headlights - right side
10	Tow hitch
11	Electric boot lid
12	Heated steering wheel
13	Light switch, diagnosis connection, rain sensor, control lever under the steering wheel, front windscreen heating
14	Windscreen washer system
15	Instrument cluster, emergency call
16	Light - right side
17	Electric windows - right side
18	Windscreen wiper
19	Infotainment
20	Heated rear window
21	Not used
22	Not used
23	Rear view camera
24	Phonebox, GSM antenna, USB-connection, Infotainment screen
25	Control lever under the steering wheel
26	Databus
27	Shock absorber adjustment (adaptive suspension)
28	Alarm system sensor
29	Alarm system horn
30	Ignition (ignition lock)
31	Air conditioning, heating
32	Passenger belt tensioners
33	Electric windows - left side
34	Driver belt tensioners
35	Light - left side
36	Horn
37	Heating of the front seats
38	Interior lighting, button lighting, headlight cleaning system, ambient lighting, manual air conditioning, heating
39	Assist systems
40	Light switch, headlights, headlight levelling, diagnostic connection, reversing light switch, control lever under the steering wheel
41	Interior mirror dimming, exterior mirror adjustment, air conditioning, CNG relay
42	Clutch pedal switch, engine start
43	Rear window wiper
44	Airbag system, airbag control lamp
45	Windscreen wiper
46	Seat heating - rear

Fuse number	Consumer
47	Not used
48	Electric steering column lock, KESSY (keyless lock and start system)
49	CNG
50	USB-Connections at the back, USB-Connection on the interior mirror
51	Not used
52	Cigarette lighter / 12 volt socket in front
53	Ignition key trigger lock, automatic transmission
54	12 volt socket in the luggage compartment
55	Not used
56	Manual air conditioning, heating
57	Not used
58	Windscreen washer system
59	Exterior mirror heating, washer nozzle heating
60	Tow hitch
61	Tow hitch

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Accessing the fuses



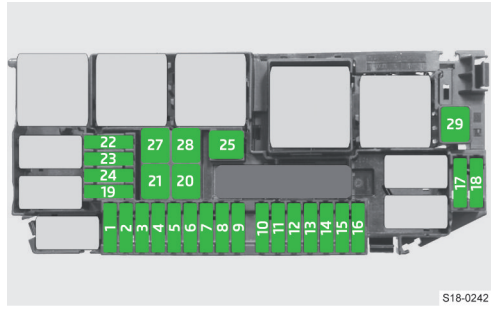
- Press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover simultaneously and remove the cover.
- Replace the fuse.
- Fit the cover and click it into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

- Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	Engine control unit
2	Exhaust flap, water pump, radiator louvre, engine components
3	Lambda probes
4	Fuel pump
5	Radiator fan, fill pressure regulator, oil temperature and quantity sensor, engine components
6	Crankcase breather, engine components
7	Brake system (vacuum pump)
8	Fuel pump, engine components
9	Brake light switch
10	Data bus, BCM unit, vehicle battery status monitoring
11	Not used
12	Air conditioning
13	Not used
14	ESC, engine control system, engine components
15	Automatic gearbox
16	Not used
17	Engine control system
18	Starter
19	Not used
20	ESC
21	ESC
22	Not used
23	Not used
24	Not used
25	Radiator fan
27	Radiator fan
28	Not used
29	Windscreen heating

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not use worn or damaged tyres (e.g. with holes, dents, cracks and bulges).

ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.

› Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.

› Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.

› Do not use light alloy rims with a ground surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

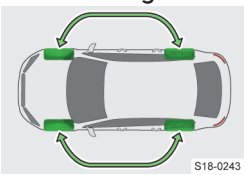
› Incorrect tyre pressure

› Driving style, e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and braking

› Incorrect wheel alignment

› Incorrect wheel balancing

Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

› With directional tyres, observe the correct direction of rotation. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. Winter and all-season tyres usually include a directional tyre tread pattern.

› Always replace the tyres by axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

The Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (valid for certain countries and models).

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

E.g. 195/65 R 15 91 T

195 Tyre width in mm
65 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial
15 Wheel diameter in inches
91 Load index
T Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

88 560 kg
89 580 kg
90 600 kg
91 615 kg
92 630 kg
93 650 kg
94 670 kg
95 690 kg
99 775 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

M 130 km/h
S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

⚠ WARNING

› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load bearing capacity and speed for the tyres fitted.

Tyre tread wear indicator



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres to display the permissible minimum tread depth.

The position of the indicators is marked with letters TWI on the side of the tyre, or with symbols, such as △.

A tyre is considered worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

ⓘ The tread depth can be measured with a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacture date

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

E.g. DOT ... 10 22 means that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of the year 2022.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre

› Spare and emergency spare wheel » page 174

› Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 174

› Breakdown kit » page 176.

Change of tyre pressure

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition:

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

All-season or winter tires

Usage

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

The symbol on the tire provides information about the grip on snow.

The symbol on the tire manufacturer's sticker provides information about the adhesion on ice.

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

Usage conditions

If all-season or winter tyres are installed that have a lower speed category than the actual specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

› In Infotainment, set the speed limit according to the category of tyres fitted.

› In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

Settings

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the Infotainment in the following menu item:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Snow chains

Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!

› Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.

› Only mount the snow chains on the front wheels.

Technical data

Permitted rim/tyre combinations for mounting of snow chains:

Rim size	Tyre size
6Jx15 ET35	195/65 R15
6Jx16 ET35	195/60 R16

Only fit snow chains with links and locks that are no larger than 13 mm.

Spare and emergency spare wheel

Overview

Spare wheel

› The dimensions of a standard spare wheel correspond to the dimensions of the wheels mounted on the vehicle.

› A temporary spare wheel is provided with a warning label on the rim. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate a space saver wheel with the maximum prescribed pressure.

Emergency wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

An emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

Removing and replacing the wheel in vehicles without sound system

The spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel is stored in a recess under the carpet or between two floor levels in the boot.

Removing



› Loosen the fastening strap and remove the toolbox.

› Unscrew the lock nut.

› Remove the wheel.

Inserting

› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.

› Put the fastening strap through the opposite holes in the wheel disc.

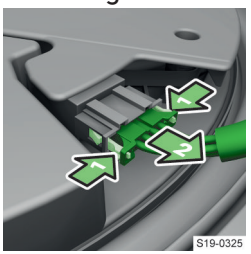
› Screw in the lock nut until it stops.

› Insert the toolbox into the wheel and secure it with the strap.

If the replaced wheel cannot be stowed in the wheel well under the carpet, stow it in the luggage compartment.

Removing and stowing the wheel in vehicles with sound system

Removing



› Loosen the fastening strap and remove the toolbox.

› Press the safety buttons and remove the connector.



› Unscrew the lock nut.

› Remove the bass loudspeaker.

› Remove the wheel.

Inserting

› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.

› Insert the bass loudspeaker.

› Screw in the lock nut until it stops.

› Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.

› Insert the toolbox into the wheel and secure it with the strap.

› If the subwoofer does not fit in the wheel you have replaced, stow it in the luggage compartment.

› If the replaced wheel cannot be stowed in the wheel well under the carpet, stow it in the luggage compartment.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before changing

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed at the front and rear using suitable tools.

› Turn off the engine.

› Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road and safely behind crash barriers, etc.

› Close all doors, the boot and the bonnet.

› If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

Lifting the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!

› Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.

› Create a non-slip base (e.g. place a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.

› Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.

› Make sure no body parts are positioned under the raised vehicle.

› Do not start the engine of the raised vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

› Make sure that the jack is correctly engaged with the bridge of the sill.

After replacement

› Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.

› In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the values in the system.

› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

The specified tightening torque is 120 Nm.

› Drive carefully until the tightening torque has been checked.

› Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Insufficient tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.

› Excessive tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not grease or lubricate screws.

› Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Removing the bolts

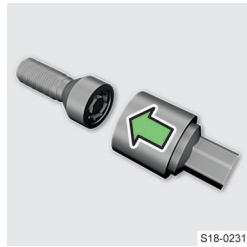
› If the vehicle is equipped with wheel bolt covers, remove them » page 178.

› If the vehicle is equipped with full wheel covers, remove them » page 179.

⚠ WARNING

› If standing on the wheelbrace when loosening the bolts, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.



› Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.

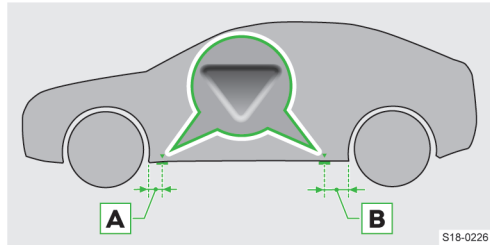


› Place the wheelbrace on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.

› Turn the bolt a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points

The jacking points are located on the vehicle's lower sill.

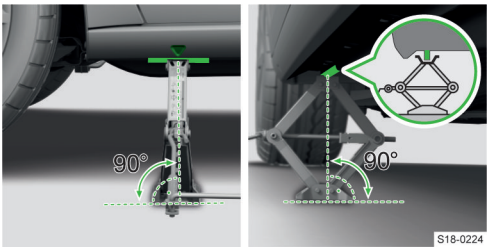


A 15.5 cm

B 25.8 cm

Positioning the jack and lifting the vehicle

› Use the jack from the tool kit.



› Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its full surface resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
› Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the ground.

Changing a wheel

› Loosen the bolts and place them on a clean surface.
› Carefully remove the wheel.
› Fit the replacement wheel.
› Contact tighten the bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Applies to factory built or original accessory wheel trims from ŠKODA.

› Install the anti-theft wheel bolt in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tightening the bolts

› Tighten opposite wheel bolts, including the anti-theft wheel bolt, one after the other.
› Refit the wheel bolt caps » page 178.

Or:

› Refit the full wheel covers » page 179.

ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement attachment can be purchased from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Breakdown kit

What you should be mindful of

The repair kit is not substitute for a permanent tyre repair.

The repair is intended only for driving to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre repaired with the puncture repair kit as soon as possible.

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance at the factory are not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Before using the kit

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
› Turn off the engine.
› Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road, e.g. behind crash barriers, etc.
› Close all doors and the boot and the bonnet lid.
› If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

After using the kit

If it is not possible to achieve a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar, the tyre is badly damaged and cannot be sealed with the kit:

› Do not continue driving. Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 2.0 – 2.5 bar, you can continue driving at max. 80 km/h, or 50 mph.

› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.

Instructions for driving with a repaired tyre

› Check the pressure of the repaired tyre after 10 minutes of driving.
› If the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving! Seek the assistance from a specialist garage.
› If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, adjust it to the correct value, at least 2 bar, and continue driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the compressor!

› Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes after the maximum running time has elapsed.

⚠ WARNING

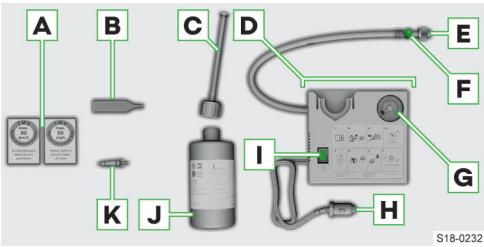
Risk of getting burned!

The tyre inflation hose and the compressor may be hot after use.

› Allow the compressor and hose to cool down for a few minutes.

Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



- **A** Sticker with speed indication
- **B** Valve remover
- **C** Inflation hose with plug
- **D** Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)
- **E** Tyre inflation hose
- **F** Button for pressure reduction
- **G** Pressure indicator
- **H** 12 volt cable connector
- **I** ON and OFF switch
- **J** Tyre inflation bottle
- **K** Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Usage restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

- The rim is damaged.
- The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.
- Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.
- There is damage to the tire sidewall.
- The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

Using the kit

Sealing the tyre

- Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
- Using the attachment, unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean pad.
- Shake the sealant bottle.
- Screw the filler hose onto the bottle. Puncture the foil on the cap.
- Remove the stopper from the filler tube and fit it onto the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle upside down and pour the entire contents into the tyre.
- Remove the filler hose from the valve.
- Screw on the valve insert.

Inflate the tyre

- Fit the compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
- Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- Start the engine.
- Insert the compressor plug into the 12-volt socket.
- Switch on the compressor.
- When the pressure reaches 2.0 – 2.5 bar, switch off the compressor.

  Observe the maximum compressor run time specified by the kit manufacturer.
- If the tyre pressure has not reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar, remove the hose from the valve.
- Move forward or backward approximately 10 m to allow the sealant to spill in the tyre.
- Refit the hose to the valve and repeat the inflation.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

- Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
- Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each longer ride.
- Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
- After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

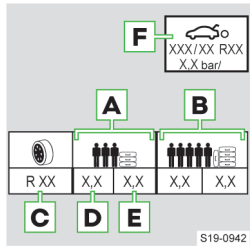
WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures

The sticker with prescribed tyre pressures is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



- **A** Tyre pressure in case of partial load
- **B** Tyre pressure when fully loaded
- **C** Tyre diameter in inches

This information only serves as information for the prescribed tyre pressure.

This is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity, in the so-called COC document.

D Tyre pressure reading for the front axle tyres
E Tyre pressure reading for the rear axle tyres
F Prescribed tyre pressure value for the emergency wheel

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

(!) illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition:

CAR > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚘 > 🚗

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached
› Sporty driving style
› Driving on dirt roads
› Snow chains fitted

Saving tyre pressure values

Store the tyre pressure values in the infotainment

› Inflate the tyres to the prescribed inflation pressure.
› Turn on the ignition.
› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition:

CAR > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚘 > 🚗

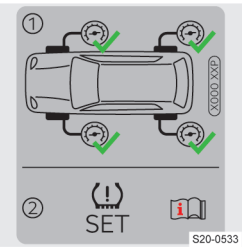
› Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ select the tyre control menu.
› Tap on the functional surface (!) **SET**.
› Then follow the instructions on the screen.

In which case should the tyre pressure values be saved

› Change of tyre pressure
› Change of one or more wheels
› Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
› Always after covering a distance of 10,000 km or once a year

Sticker for storing tyre pressure reading

The procedure for storing the tyre pressure values is also shown on a sticker. It is located on the central body pillar on the driver side



1 Inflating the tyre to the specified inflation pressure.
2 Storage of the values

Troubleshooting

Functional restriction / system fault

(!) flashes for about 1 minute and stays on

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

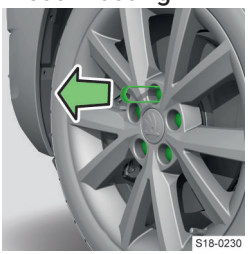
If the indicator light (!) flashes again after the engine starts, there is a problem with the system.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Remove cover caps and install

Disconnecting



› Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
› Remove the cover cap.

Installing

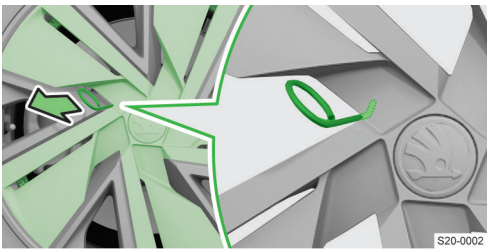
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full wheel frame

Removing and installing the trim

Removal

Applies to factory built or original accessory aero trims from ŠKODA.



› Hang the hook as close to the centre as possible to remove the wheel covers at the edge of the panel.
› Pull off the centre of the wheel cover by loosening it and pulling off the trim.

For easier removal, you can put the wheel bolt wrench through the eye of the hook and pull on both ends of the wrench.

Installing

Applies to factory built or original accessory aero trims from ŠKODA.

› When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.
› Position the panel on the wheel rim and push in the individual spokes of the panel one after the other until they are fully engaged.
› Press in the centre of the wheel cover until it engages completely.

NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Removal

Does not apply to aero trims. Applies to other factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

› Hang the hook for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the hook, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

Does not apply to aero trims. Applies to other factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

› Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

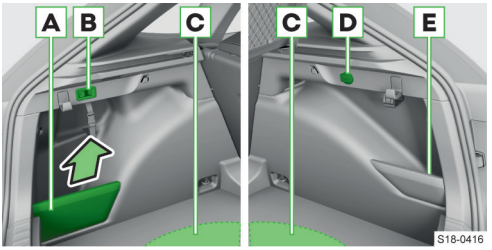
NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

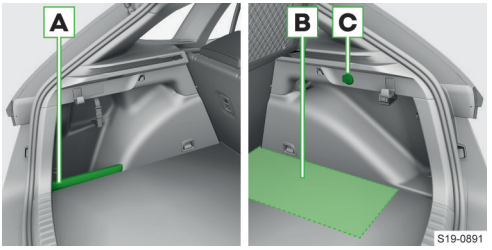
Equipment in the boot

Overview



Luggage compartment of a non-CNG vehicle

- **A** Removable storage box partition
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **B** Towing bracket switch
- **C** Under the carpet: space for stowing the spare or temporary wheel and toolkit
  Max. load on the carpet is 75 kg
- **D** 12-volt power socket
- **E** Storage compartment
  Max. load 1.5 kg



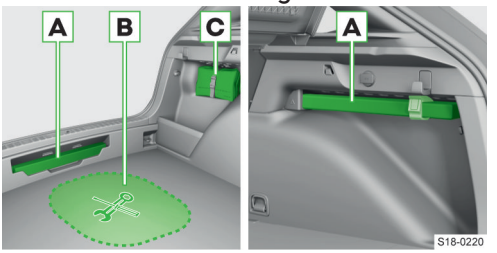
Luggage compartment of a vehicle with CNG-drive

- **A** Removable storage box partition
  Max. load 2.5 kg
- **B** Under the carpet: space for stowing the toolkit.
  Max. load on the carpet is 75 kg
- **C** 12-volt power socket

Emergency equipment

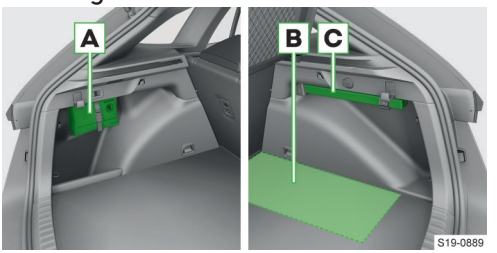
Overview

Emergency equipment in the boot of a vehicle without natural gas drive



- **A** Positioning of the warning triangle (depending on equipment)
- **B** Tool kit
- **C** Placing of the first-aid kit

Emergency equipment in the boot of a natural gas vehicle



- **A** Placing of the first-aid kit
- **B** Tool kit
- **C** Placing of the warning triangle

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat

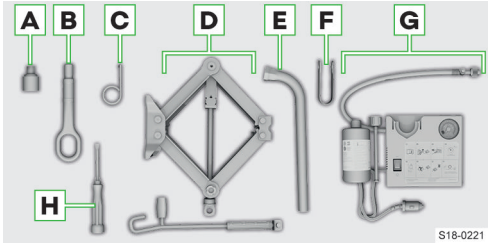
Only valid for some countries.



Tool kit

Overview

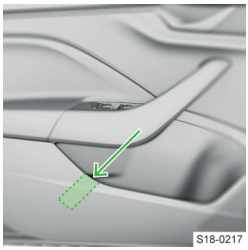
Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



- **A** Attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts
- **B** Towing lug
- **C** Hook for removing the full wheel covers
- **D** Jack with sign and crank
- **E** Wheel wrench
- **F** Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps
- **G** Breakdown set
- **H** Screwdriver

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

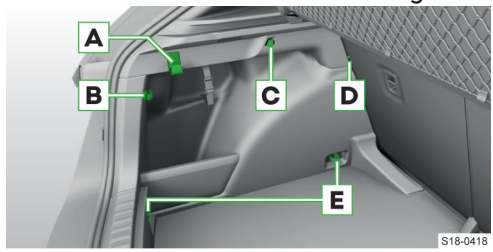
Storage compartment for the reflective vest



Fasteners in the boot

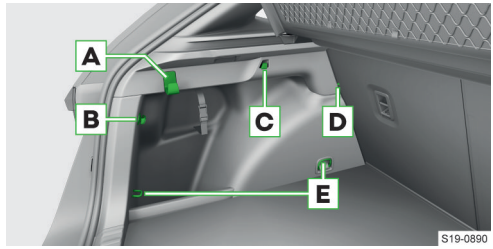
Overview

Vehicle without the variable loading floor



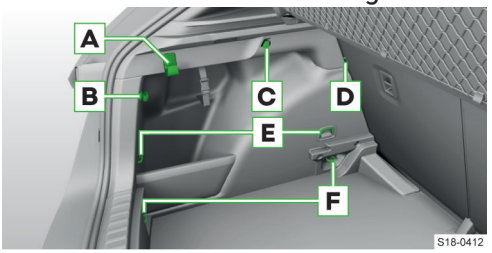
- **A** Bag hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- **B** Brackets for securing the fastening nets
- **C** Hook for securing the fastening nets
  Max. load 1.5 kg
- **D** Lashing eye for securing the fastening nets
- **E** Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
  Max. load 350 kg

Vehicle with CNG drive



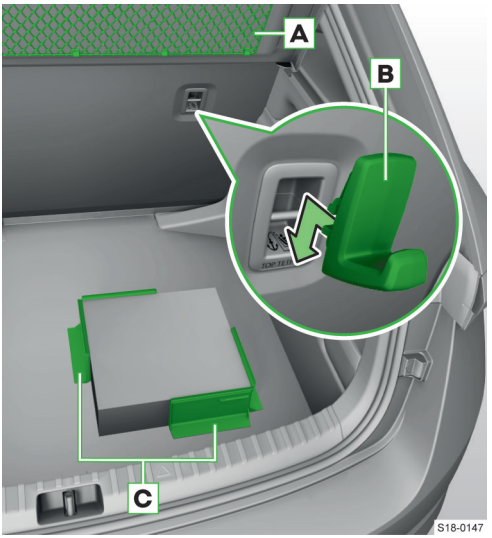
- **A** Bag hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- **B** Brackets for securing the fastening nets
- **C** Hook for securing the fastening nets
  Max. load 1.5 kg
- **D** Lashing eye for securing the fastening nets
- **E** Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
  Max. load 350 kg

Vehicle with the variable loading floor



- **A** Bag hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- **B** Brackets for securing the fastening nets
- **C** Hook for securing the fastening nets
  Max. load 1.5 kg
- **D** Lashing eye for securing the fastening nets
- **E** Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
  Max. load 350 kg
- **F** Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
  Max. load 350 kg

More fasteners

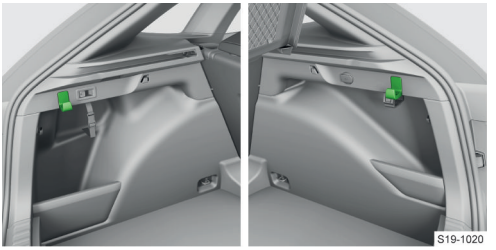


- **A** Net on the luggage compartment cover
  Max. load 1.5 kg
- **B** Hook for securing load on the lashing eye of the system TOP TETHER
  Max. load 5 kg
- **C** Cargo elements
  Max. load 8 kg

Space for stowing the Cargo securing elements is under the carpet in the luggage compartment.

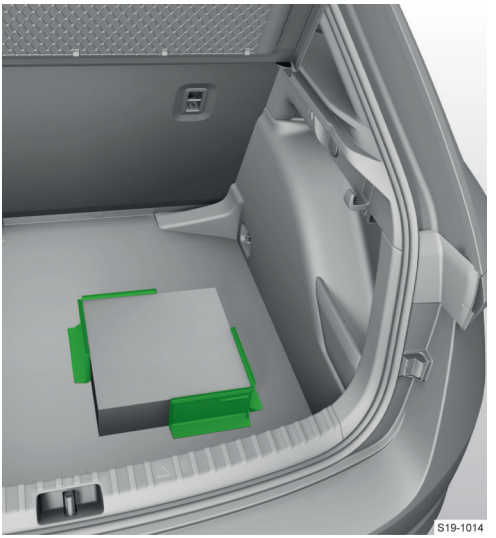
› Cargo fold down the element and fix it on the carpet in the luggage compartment.

Bag hooks in the luggage compartment



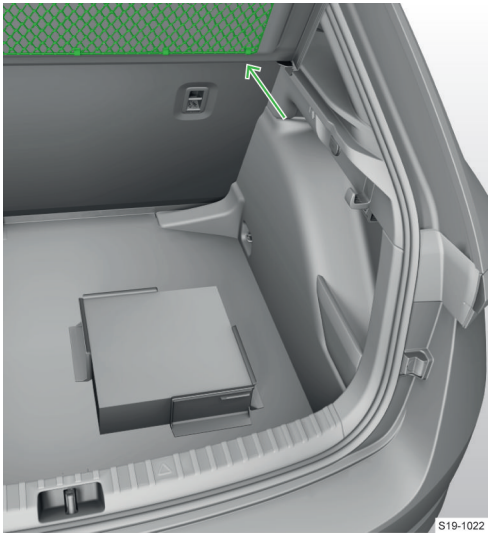
The maximum hook load is 7.5 kg.

Cargo elements in the luggage compartment



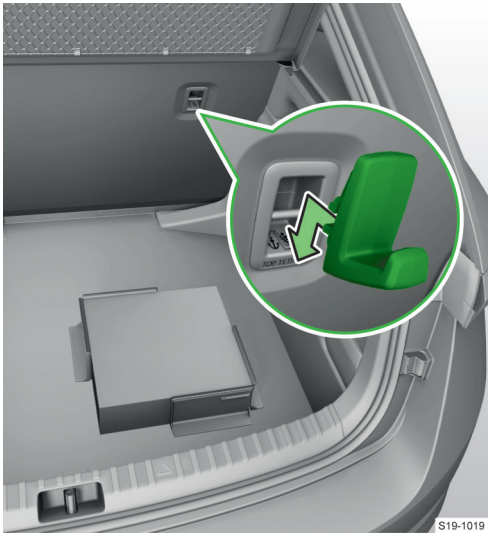
The maximum load for the Cargoelements is 8 kg.

Storage net



The maximum permissible load for the net is 1.5 kg.

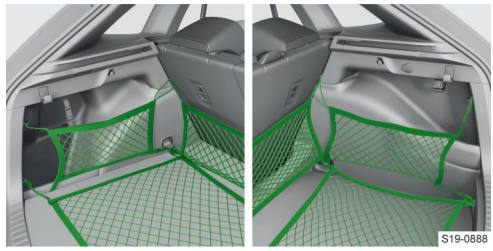
Hook on the eyelet of the TOP TETHER system



The maximum load for the hook is 5 kg.

Fastening nets

Overview



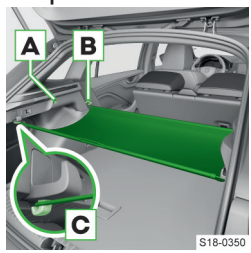
The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

Storage pocket

Operation

The maximum load of the other fastening nets is 3.5 kg.

Suspension

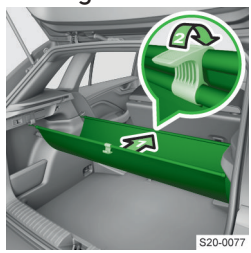


› The storage bag at the attachment points A. B or C is hung.

NOTICE

› Before hanging up the storage bag, remove the hook from the holding eye of the TOP TETHERSystem.

Folding

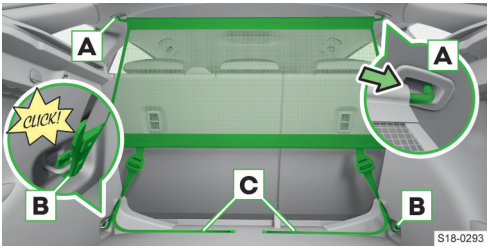


› Place the rear strip against the front strip and press them together at both ends.

Net partition

Attach the net partition

Attach at the back



- Place the crossbar in the supports A.
- Snap the carabiners B into the lashing eyes.
- Pull the straps firmly at the free ends C.

Fasten in the front

The procedure is analogous to the process behind.

The lashing eyes for the carabiner are located under the central body pillars.

Loosening

Loosening takes place in the reverse order to fixing.

Double-sided floor covering

Overview

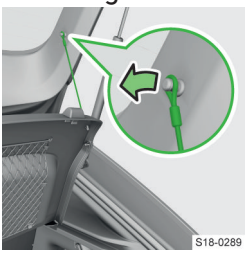
The vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

Rigid boot cover

Removing and inserting

The maximum load of the other fastening nets is 1 kg.

Removing



- Unhook the straps.



- Remove the cover.

Inserting

- Insert the cover until it clicks into place.
- Hook in the retaining straps.

Store the cover behind the rear seats



- Hook the cover behind the rear seats.

Variable loading floor in the boot

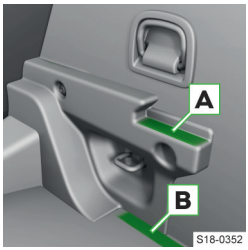
Setting the position

The maximum load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Set the variable loading floor to the upper or lower position



- Lift the variable load floor and pull it towards you.

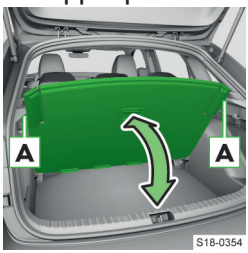


- To set in the upper position, place the variable loading floor in the front area on area A.
- To set in the lower position, place the variable loading floor in the front area on space B.



› Press the variable loading floor forward and hang up.

Fasten the raised variable loading floor in the upper position



› Secure the raised variable loading floor with the help of hinged corners in areas A.

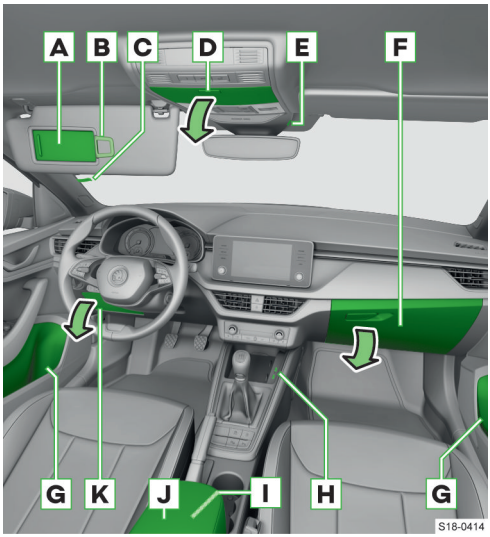
Removing and inserting

› Lift the variable loading floor up to a distance of about 15 cm below the boot cover and then remove it.

› Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Interior equipment front

Overview



A Make-up mirror

B Ticket holder

C Parking permit holder

D Glasses holder
Max. load 0.25 kg
› Press the button to open.

E Input USB
The USB input can only be used for charging.

F Storage compartment
Max. load 3 kg
› Pull the handle to open the storage compartment.

G Storage compartment
› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
› Space for waste container
› Storage compartment for reflective vest

H Inputs USB
The USB inputs can be used for charging and for data transfer.

I 12-volt power socket

J Adjustable armrest with storage compartment
There is a card holder at the bottom of the armrest.
› Pull the handle to open the storage compartment.

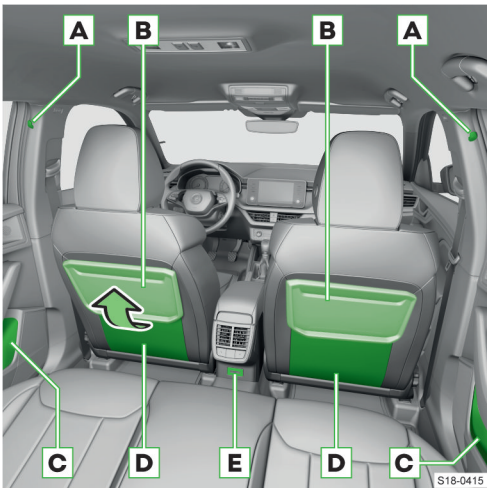
K Storage compartment
Max. load 0.5 kg
› Pull the handle to open.

NOTICE

› Do not leave any heat-sensitive objects in the spectacle compartment D

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook
Max. load 2 kg

B Folding table

C Storage compartment
› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l
› Storage compartment for reflective vest

D Storage pocket

E Inputs USB
The USB inputs can only be used for charging.

⚠ WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Car park ticket holder



Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 0.5 l.

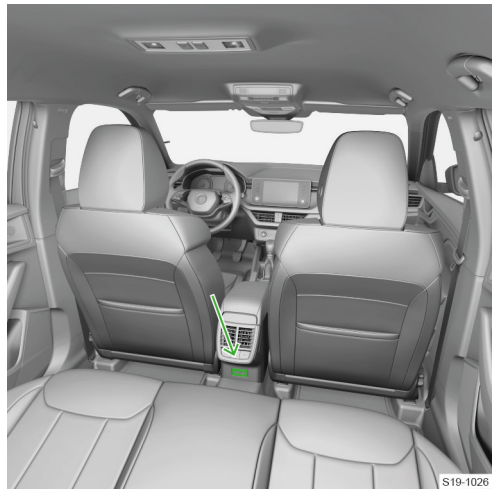
USB-connections



The USB connection is for charging only.



The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.



The USB connections are for charging only.

The clothes hook on the middle door pillar



The maximum coat hooks load is 2 kg.

⚠ WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Glasses compartment

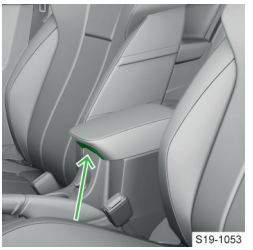


The maximum load for the compartment is 0.25 kg.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not leave heat-sensitive objects behind in the glasses compartment.

Card holder on the armrest



Storage compartment under the front seat

Opening the storage compartment



The maximum load for the compartment is 1.5 kg.

Storage compartment for an umbrella

Overview



ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and the interior trim of the vehicle!

› In the storage compartment, only insert the umbrella from the ŠKODA original accessories.

› Always push the umbrella into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging!

› The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.

› Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

Function Phone box

› Wireless phone charging.

› Amplifies the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

Phone box is located at the front of the centre console storage compartment.

Insert a phone no larger than 174 x 83 mm into the storage compartment.

Charging indicator

Applies to Swing and Bolero Infotainment systems.

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen.

› White – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, and it is being charged.

› Red – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.

› Symbol not displayed – function unavailable.

Charging indicator

Applies to the Amundsen Infotainment system.

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen.

› White – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, and it is being charged.

› Grey – the phone is not in the phone box / the phone does not support wireless charging / the phone is fully charged.

› Red – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.

› Symbol not displayed – function unavailable.

Recommendations for optimal function

› The phone should be positioned with the screen facing up.

› Insert the phone without its protective case.

› Position the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.

✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system display shows a message that the mobile phone cannot be charged.

› Check that there are no objects between the pad and the phone being charged. If so, remove the phone and the object. Replace the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

› Check that the position of the phone being charged has not changed. If so, remove the phone and replace it in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

⚠ CAUTION

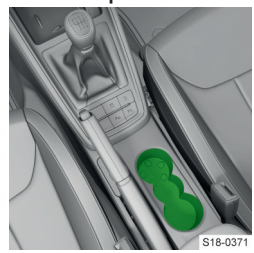
Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Front cup holder



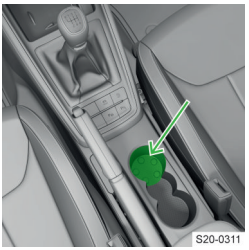
The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

Rear cup holder



Cup holder Easy Open



The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

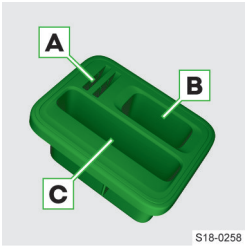
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Multimedia holder

Overview

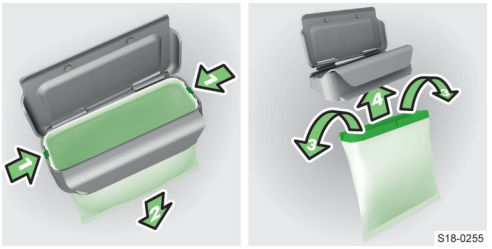
The multimedia holder is inserted in the cup holder.



- **A** Storage compartment for coins
- **B** Storage compartment for the vehicle key
- **C** Storage compartment for a mobile phone

Waste container

Replace bags



Ashtray and cigarette lighter

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burning or fire!

› Do not use the ashtray for storing hot or burning objects.

› Handle the lighter carefully.

Operation

The ashtray is inserted in the cup holder.

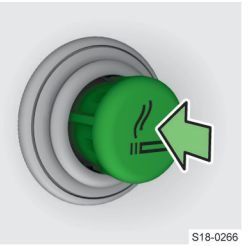
Open the ashtray



Remove the lid



Cigarette lighter



› Push in the lighter.

› Wait until the glowing lighter pops back out.

› Remove the lighter and use.

› Push the lighter back in.

The socket of the cigarette lighter serves as a 12-Volt socket.

Folding table

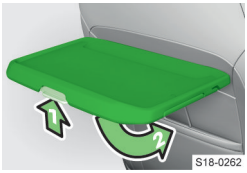
Operation

Fold up the table



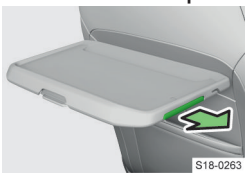
› Press the safety button and fold the table up to the desired position.

Unfold the table



› Press the safety button and unfold the table.

Slide out the cup holder



The maximum load for the table is 8.5 kg.

⚠ CAUTION

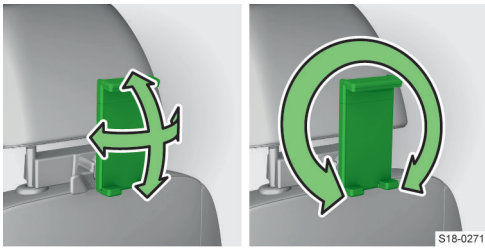
Risk of injury!

› While driving, the table must be in the folded-down position.

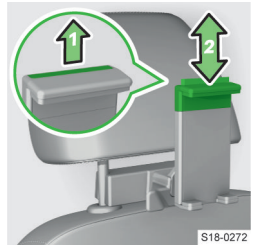
Tablet holder

Settings

Tilt and turn



Adjust size

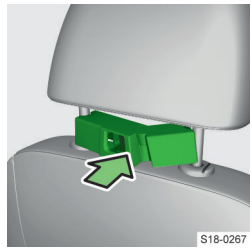


› Pull out the locking tab and move the upper part of the holder to the desired position.

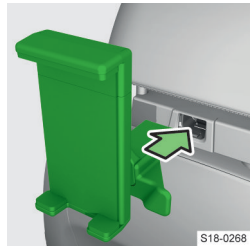
Set the minimum size of the empty holder to avoid noise while driving.

Removal and Insertion

Fasten behind the headrests

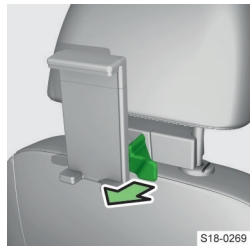


› Place the open adapter on the front guide rods of the headrest and clip in carefully.

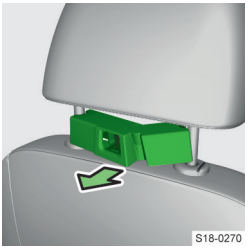


› Clip in the holder in the adapter.

Removal



› Press the safety button and unfold the holder.



› Press on the adapter and remove it.

Technical data

The holder is for fixing a tablet with a height of min. 11.5 cm and max. 19.5 cm.

The maximum load for the holder is 0.75 kg.

12-Volt power socket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!

› Use the sockets only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

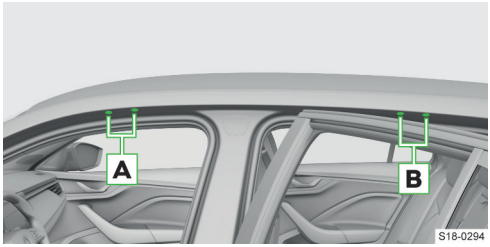
› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

Roof rack and hitch

Roof rack

Technical data

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.



Depending on the equipment, the roof bars can be attached at the attachment points A and B.

› We recommend using roof bars from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Swivelling hitch

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Handle the trailer coupling carefully.

› When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!

› When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Tow bar: swivel out/in

Swing out the tow bar



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar swings out. The indicator light ⇝ inside the switch illuminates.



› Press the tow bar until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light ⇝ within the switch lights up.

Swivel tow bar

ⓘ NOTICE

› No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.

› A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar is unlocked. The indicator light ⇝ inside the switch illuminates.



› Swing in the tow bar under the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light ⊷ within the switch lights up.

Coupling or uncoupling a trailer or accessory

The following information describes the procedure for coupling and uncoupling a trailer. The information also refers to another accessory, e.g. a bike carrier.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use the safety eye for towing.

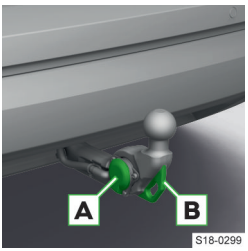
› Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer has a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coupling

› Swing out the tow bar.

› Put the trailer drawbar onto the ball head.



› Plug the electrical trailer plug into the socket A.

› Hook the tear-off rope of the trailer onto the safety eye B. The tear-off rope must sag against the vehicle in all trailer positions.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Power supply of the trailer power network

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer is powered by the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!

The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

Trailer coupling error

The indicator light ⊷ inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

› Do not use the trailer coupling.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

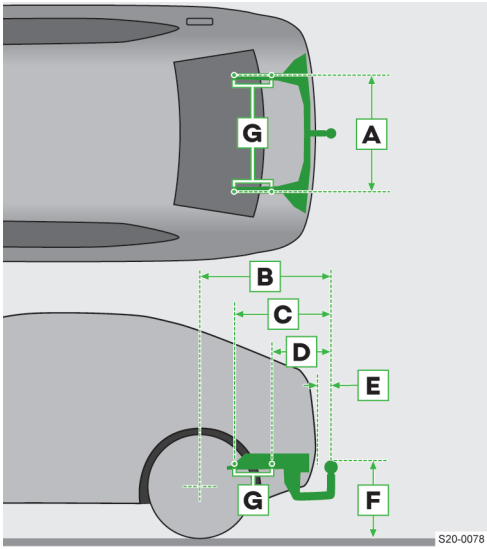
Tow bar not locked

illuminates

› Engage the tow bar.

Technical data

Tow hitch attachment points



- **A** Distance of the attachment points
- **B** Length of the rear overhang to the centre of the ball head
- **C** Distance of the front attachment point to the centre of the ball head
- **D** Distance of the rear attachment point to the centre of the ball head
- **E** Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the ball head (according to the ECE-55 standard)
- **F** Distance from the centre of the ball head to the road (according to the ECE-55 standard)
- **G** Fastening points on the body

	In mm
A	1030.30
B	960.7
C	643
D	351.7
E	min. 65
F	350-420

Maximum vertical load for trailer operation

The maximum nose weight when towing a trailer is 75 kg.

The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document, or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information, e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device, merely provides information on the test values of the device.

Support load with mounted accessories

When using the accessories, e.g. bicycle carrier, the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The maximum length of the mounted accessories from the ball of the towing device may not exceed 70 cm.

The permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including its load corresponds to the maximum vertical load for trailer operation; the value can be found in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the maximum load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the centre of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases, e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half.

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the ball head of the towing hitch is 70 cm, the permissible total weight of the accessories including their load is reduced to 0 kg.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.

› The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!

› When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

Maintaining and cleaning

Service events

service intervals

Compliance with service intervals is crucial for the life and value of the vehicle.

You will be notified of the due date for service with the symbol and the corresponding message on the display of the instrument cluster.

The specialist garage will inform you of the type of service interval, the option of changing this and the scope of service.

All services and the replacement or refilling of operating fluids are chargeable to the customer, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements determine otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the information system called Digital Service Plan.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Displaying the service due date in the Infotainment system

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > > Menu item for the Service

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the Service

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals and thus also to possible faults in the vehicle.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed after the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories and ŠKODA Genuine Parts. These guarantee reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle.

Authorised workshop ŠKODA

All ŠKODA authorised workshops adhere to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO. to ensure repairs are carried out on time and to the appropriate standards. Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in good technical condition.

We therefore recommend that all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Genuine Parts

We recommend using ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts are fully compliant with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is responsible for the safety, compatibility and long-term service life of these products.

ŠKODA authorised workshops are liable for any defects on ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

ŠKODA genuine accessories

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO is responsible for their safety, reliability and suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA authorised workshops are liable for any defects on ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years from the date of installation or acceptance, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Spoilers

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be used without the spoiler on the boot lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult a ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not attach any racks, e.g. for bicycles or luggage, to the rear spoiler.

Component protection

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-fitted with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in the event of an unauthorised installation in another vehicle (e.g. following a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Interior

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Leatherette / Alcantara® / Suedia / Fabric

ⓘ NOTICE

- Remove any dirt as soon as possible.
- Do not use any leather polish, polishing waxes, shoe polish, stain remover or similar agents for the Alcantara® and Suedia seat covers.
- Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fading of the cover fabric

- If possible, do not leave the covers in direct sunlight for long periods.

ⓘ

- Over time, Alcantara®, Suedia and leather materials may show minor observable changes such as wrinkling or discolouration with use. This does not constitute a material defect.
- Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, may not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, seat upholstery may become visibly discoloured. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- Sharp-edged zips, rivets, clamps and similar accessories can damage the vehicle's upholstery. The complaints process does not cover such damage.

Plastic parts

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the dash panel

- Do not attach fragrances or air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna

- Do not apply stickers to the heating filaments.
- Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damaging the heating system!

- Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts

- Do not dry clean the seat belts.
- Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Leatherette / Alcantara® / Suedia / Fabric

- Remove dust and dirt from the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove recent stains with water, a slightly moistened cotton cloth or a woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution[1)] and wipe with a dry cloth.
- Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
- For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing two tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

› When treating Alcantara®, Suedia and fabric surfaces, remove stubborn hairs with a special cleaning glove. Remove any pilling with a brush.

Plastic parts

› Remove dirt with water and a slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

› Remove dirt with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

› Remove any dirt from the screen using the cleaning agents provided.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Digital instrument cluster display, Head-up display

› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Covers on electrically heated seats

› Remove stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

› Remove dirt with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.[1)]

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.

› Clean and dry the brakes by repeatedly applying them at higher speeds.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel etc. are to be removed as soon as possible.

› Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.

› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.

› Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

› Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.

› Do not treat painted parts with or hard waxes.

› Do not polish panels.

› We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate materials from ŠKODA original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.

› Do not use abrasive cleaners to clean the reversing camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Observe the usual specifications of the car wash, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, etc.

› Move the windscreen wiper lever to position **OFF** to adjust.

› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, observe the instructions of the car wash operator.

ⓘ NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

› Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with a wax preservation

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Wash with a pressure washer

ⓘ NOTICE

› Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaner, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spray distance to the vehicle surface.

› Do not direct the water jet directly at the following vehicle parts:
  › Films
  › Lock cylinder
  › Columns on the vehicle
  › Trailer connection
  › Swivelling ball bar
  › Camera lenses and sensors
  › Plastic, chromed and anodised parts

---

1) A mild soap solution containing two tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Remove snow and ice

NOTICE

- Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable deicing agent.
- Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
- Only move the scraper in one direction.
- Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
- Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
- Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Instructions for cleaning

Handwash

- Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash glove and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
- Use a mild soap solution for foils and headlights [1].
- Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
- Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

NOTICE

- Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
- Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
- Do not wash the vehicle in the blazing sun.
- Do not dry the headlights or use sharp objects.
- Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
- The temperature of the washing water may be a max. 60 °C.

After hand washing

- Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

- Preserve the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.
- Use a polish for matt lacquers.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not an error.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

- Sun rays
- moisture
- Air pollution
- Stones, e.g. due to the rebound of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

- Remove spilled wax with a plastic scraper, clean stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

- Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

- After washing, preserve the wheels with suitable means.

WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- Severe dirt on the wheels can result in the wheels unbalancing.

Car jack

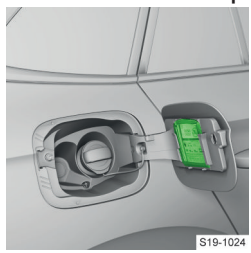
- If necessary, treat moving parts with suitable grease.

Tow hitch

- Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Ice scraper

On the fuel filler flap



[1] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Technical data and specifications

Technical data regulations

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

This information meets the requirements and conditions stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner.

The information in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can negatively impact this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption and carbon dioxide (CO_2) specified in the vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity.

The performance values indicated have been determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The vehicle is equipped with devices that conform to the requirements of the current EU regulations and bear the CE (Conformité Européenne) mark. In the UK market (England, Wales and Scotland), this marking corresponds to the UKCA (UK conformity assessed) mark, unless otherwise specified by law.

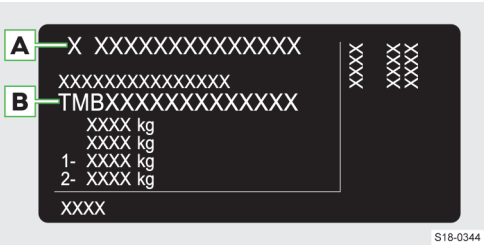


Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found at the following locations:

- Directly in the engine compartment on the suspension turret
- On a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
- On the type plate at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle



Type plate

A Vehicle manufacturers

B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Display VIN

The display of the VIN takes place in the infotainment in the following menu item:

CAR > > Menu item for the Service

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the Service

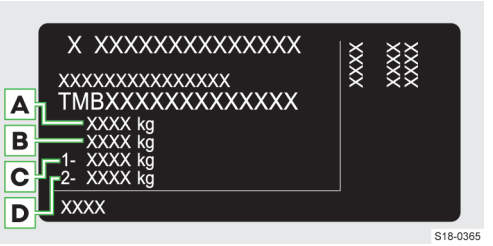
Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Maximum permissible weights

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the right middle body pillar of the vehicle.



A Maximum permissible gross weight

B Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Maximum permissible towed weight

The specified value is valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb.

Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

Payloads

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components:

› The weight of the passenger
› The weight of all luggage and other loads
› The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system
› The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight
› Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » *page 194*

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!

› Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/66 kW TSI G-TEC	manual	1,308
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	manual	1196
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	manual	1,216
	automatic	1,236
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	automatic	1,220
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	manual	1,245
	automatic	1,252/1,264 [a)]
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	manual	1,175
	automatic	1,208

[a)] Applies to vehicles that meet the EU6AP emission standard.

ⓘ Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions

Specification	Value (in mm)
Vehicle height	1,469 [a]/1,471
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1,793
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	1,988
Ground clearance	149
Vehicle length	4,362

[a] Applies to vehicles with the 1.0l/66 kW TSI G-TEC engine.

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, hereinafter called as “EDR”. The purpose of the EDR lies in the data recording during a traffic accident or another extraordinary traffic situation, hereinafter called as “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data support the analysis of how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and after the accident. This enables them to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. Whether for instance the affected systems were switched on or off at the corresponding time, whether they were only partially available or were inactive. There is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions are, e.g:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Lane Assist (Lane Assist)
- Park steering assistant
- Emergency braking function (Front Assist)

Under normal driving conditions, data is not recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect EDR content to other data sources, and therefore deduce the identification of some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

For reading the EDR-Data, special equipment is required and the ignition switched on.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised for use of the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data is displayed using the following link or by reading the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Europe and countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The radio system manufacturers declare that these systems comply with the requirements of the 2014/53/EU Directive.

Ukraine

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that the equipment complies with the requirements of the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment approved by Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017.

UA – in order to operate radio equipment in Ukraine it is necessary to obtain a permit in the manner prescribed by the legislation of Ukraine

Great Britain

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. The UK market acts as an importer of these radio devices in accordance with the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 as follows:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeomans Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Turkey

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/AB regulation it acts as an importer [1)] for Turkey:

Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar

E5 Karayolu Fil Yokusu no:16

Cevizli Maltepe

Istanbul

Turkey

Moldavia

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/EU regulation it acts as an importer for Moldova:

DAAC Auto SRL

Importator oficial ŠKODA

Str. Calea Orheiului 111/6

MD–2020, mun. Chișinău

Israel

The Department of Communications wireless approval number is 6525101.

The use of the equipment is secondary and not subject to radio operation authorisation, i.e. - it is not resistant to interference and does not interfere with other legally operated systems.

The equipment is only exempted from radio operation permits in “Bezeq mode” and only for the customer's own use.

The provision of the “Bezeq service” to third parties is subject to a specific licence from the Ministry of Communications.

The antenna of the equipment may not be replaced or other technical changes made.

Displaying information on radio devices

The following information on radio equipment is available on the ŠKODA website:

---

1) This information only applies to products imported by our official representative, Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar.

› Information about Directive 2014/53/EU on harmonising the laws of the Member States on making radio equipment available on the market
› Information on the Technical Regulation on radio equipment approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017
› Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity) of radio equipment manufacturers

To view the information, please use the following link or load the QR code:

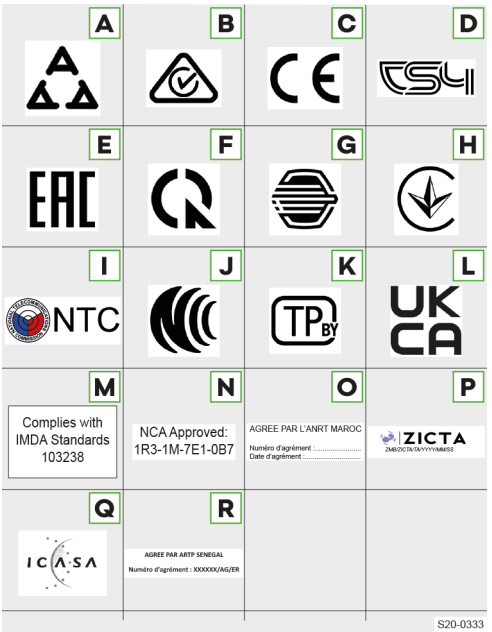
https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Chose the required car model.

Examples of radio system labels

Due to the small size of some radio equipment, examples of radio equipment designations are given here.



A	Serbia
B	Australia and New Zealand
C	Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
D	Armenia
E	Russia (countries of the Russian customs union)
F	Vietnam
G	Mongolia
H	Ukraine
I	Philippines
J	Taiwan
K	Belarus
L	Great Britain
M	Singapore
N	Ghana
O	Morocco
P	Zambia
Q	South Africa
R	Senegal

Transmitted frequency ranges, transmission power

Depending on the car equipment not all the listed devices may be available in the car, and on the market

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmission power
Central locking remote control key	433.05 – 434.79 MHz	10 mW
Central electronics unit	434.42 MHz	–
Independent heating remote control	868.2 – 868.4 MHz 868.7 – 869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW
Independent car heating	868.2 – 868.4 MHz 868.7 – 869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmission power
Keyless car unlocking	434.42 MHz 125 kHz	32 µW 40 dBµA/m
WLAN – hotspot	2412 – 2472 MHz 2400 – 2483.5 MHz 2402 – 2442 MHz 2408 – 2480 MHz 5180 – 5825 MHz 5190 – 5795 MHz	14 dBm 10 dBm 20 dBm 4.1 dBm 11 dBm 9 dBm
WLAN 2.4 GHz	2412 – 2480 MHz	63 mW
WLAN 5 GHz	5745 – 5850 MHz	25 mW
Bluetooth	2402 – 2480 MHz	20 mW
Infotainment	MW (AM): 531 – 1602 kHz FM: 87.5 – 108 MHz DAB: (BAND III): 174.928 – 239.2 MHz Bluetooth: 2400 – 2483.5 MHz	– – – 10 dBm
Wireless mobile phone charging	111 kHz	42 dBµA/m
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76 – 77 GHz 24.050 – 24.25 GHz	23.38 dBm <20 dBm
Instrument cluster with integrated immobiliser	AM: 125 +/-10 kHz	1.108 W
Antennas and impedance converters	AM: 0.52 – 1.7 MHz FM: 87 – 108 MHz DAB: 174 – 240 MHz GNSS: 1559.052 – 1605.375 MHz	– – – –
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	GSM900 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) GSM1800 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 – 2170 MHz) WCDMA FDDIII (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110 – 2170 MHz) LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500–2570 MHz / downlink: 2620 – 2690 MHz) LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832–862 MHz / downlink: 791 – 821 MHz)	GSM900: 33 dBm/2 W GSM1800: 30 dBm/1 W UMTS: 21 dBm/ 0.125 W LTE: 23 dBm/0.2 W
RSAD boxes	Receiving frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz) Transmitting frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–6,2 dBm e.i.r.p.
Analog instrument cluster: Global / Basic / Medium	125 kHz	40 dBµA/m (at a distance of 10 m)

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmission power
Digital instrument cluster: FPK Basic 8"	125 kHz	33.69 dBµA/m (at a distance of 3 m)
Tyre pressure monitoring assistant	433.92 MHz	10 mW

Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices

Applies to Germany

Used batteries

Used batteries must be collected and recycled separately by the end user. This is shown by the symbol of the crossed-out bin. As an end-user, you have a legal obligation to surrender used batteries.

Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to human and animal health and can accumulate in the environment. To avoid these consequences, make sure that used batteries are collected separately and disposed of properly.

Particular attention should be paid to the handling of batteries containing lithium. For example, they must never be heated to high temperatures or physically damaged. Leaking gases or liquids from damaged batteries can pose a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit can also cause a fire or explosion.

› Used batteries can be dropped off at a ŠKODA Partner in EU member states and other countries.
› High-voltage batteries can be dropped off at a ŠKODA Partner.
› For more information on take-back and recycling, please contact your ŠKODA Partner.

Old electrical/electronic equipment

Your vehicle contains electrical and electronic devices, such as a remote control key. These devices are marked with a crossed-out bin symbol.

The relevant legislation requires that old equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. These devices can be dropped off at local collection points or any state-approved drop-off system.

› Batteries, rechargeable batteries, or flash lights that are not hard-wired must first be dismantled and disposed of appropriately.
› You are responsible for deleting any personal information that is stored on old devices.
› For more information on take-back and recycling, please contact your ŠKODA Partner.

Information on trademarks

Specific terms in this guide are marked with the symbol ® or ™. These denote trademarks or registered brands. If this symbol is missing, it still does not warrant free use of these terms.

Other product names are registered brands or trademarks of the respective copyright holder.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of VDA.
Alcantara® is a certified brand of ALCANTARA S.p.A.
Android Auto™ is a certified brand of Google Inc.
Apple CarPlay™, Siri® are certified brands of Apple Inc.
Bluetooth® is a certified brand of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
HDMI, the HDMI logo are brands or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
MirrorLink®, the MirrorLink® logo are certified brands of Car Connectivity Consortium LLC.
Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

Rights arising from defective performance

Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA Partner from the time of the vehicle handover, the date of which is duly documented together with the vehicle identification number (VIN), in the "Vehicle handover documentation" section in this Owner's Manual.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars

In addition to the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA Partners provide you with the ŠKODA new car warranty (hereinafter referred to as the "ŠKODA warranty") under the following terms and conditions.

Under the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA partners provide the following benefits[1)]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs on your vehicle within 2 years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork defects that occurs on your vehicle within 3 years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body that occurs on your vehicle within 12 years of the start of the Warranty.

  In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.

The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new vehicle is handed over for use by a ŠKODA Partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner[2)].

The ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the manufacturer's relevant systems, and any ŠKODA Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Fault rectification under the ŠKODA Warranty shall be carried out by replacing or repairing the deffective parts. The ŠKODA authorised workshop will determine the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the ŠKODAauthorised workshop's capabilities. Any replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA authorised workshop.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The ŠKODA Warranty can be claimed at any ŠKODA authorised workshop. The defect must be notified within the warranty period and without undue delay after its discovery.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty, if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally in accordance with the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO, or its execution was not proven by the customer when the claim was made under the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Damage was not reported immediately to a specialist company or was not properly remedied.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear, such as tyres, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchroniser rings, 12-volt vehicle battery, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, making other modifications or technical changes of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g.tuning).
- Unauthorised use, incorrect handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions, overloading or commercial passenger transport), incorrect care or unauthorised maintenance.
- Failure to follow the instructions in your vehicle's Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions, including but not limited to, failure to update the vehicle's software properly and on time.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

This ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

If the car is sold within the warranty period, the rights under the ŠKODA Warranty are transferred to the buyer, who is entitled to exercise them to the extent and under the conditions existing at the time of the sale of the car.

ŠKODA Mobility Guarantee

The Mobility Warranty provides you with peace of mind for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left immobilised on the road due to an unexpected fault, we offer services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assis-

---

1) In some countries, ŠKODA Partners may provide you with a warranty in addition to the ŠKODA Warranty terms and conditions listed here. For the specific terms and scope of such warranty, as well as the length of the warranty periods, please refer to the purchase contract with your ŠKODA Partner or the accompanying documentation. Any rights under a warranty provided in excess of the terms of the ŠKODA Warranty can only be exercised with ŠKODA Partners who have agreed to provide such a warranty.

2) As required by generally binding legislation in some countries, the date of registration of the vehicle may be given instead of the date of handover.

tance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the ŠKODA authorised workshop, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA authorised workshop may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Guarantee are only valid if your vehicle suffers a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the mobility guarantee for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, your ŠKODA Partner will inform you of your options.

Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty with your new car, ŠKODA Partners offer free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims relating to the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA Warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

Defects may only be remedied under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty by replacing or repairing the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA authorised workshop decides on the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the ŠKODAauthorised workshop´s capabilities.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The above-mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion are unaffected by the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

For information on the detailed terms and conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, please contact your ŠKODA Partner.

ⓘ The ŠKODA Mobility Guarantee and the extended warranty are only available for certain countries.

Engine specifications

1.0 l/66 kW engine TSI G-TEC

Output (kW at 1/min.)	66/4,000 – 5,500
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min.)	160/1,800 – 3,800
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Gearbox	manual
Maximum speed (km/h)	186
With specified gear engaged	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	12.2

1.0 l/70 kW engine TSI

Output (kW at 1/min.)	70/5,000 – 5,500
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min.)	175/1,600 – 3,500
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Gearbox	manual
Maximum speed (km/h)	193
With specified gear engaged	5
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.9

1.0 l/81 kW engine TSI

Output (kW at 1/min.)	81/5,500	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min.)	200/2,000 – 3,000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	202	201
With specified gear engaged	5	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.0	10.1

1.0 l/85 kW engine TSI

Output (kW at 1/min.)	85/5,000-5,500
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min.)	200/2,000-3,500
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Gearbox	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	196
With specified gear engaged	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	9.8

1.5 l/110 kW engine TSI

Output (kW at 1/min.)	110/5,000 – 6,000	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min.)	250/1,500 – 3,500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,498	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	223	213/222 [a)]
With specified gear engaged	6	5/6 [a)]
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.2	8.2/8.1 [a)]
[a)] Applies to vehicles that meet the EU6AP emission standard.		

1.6 l/81 kW engine MPI

Output (kW at 1/min.)	81/5,800	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min.)	152/3,850 – 4,000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,598	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	194	188
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.5	11.7

Index

Numbers and symbols

12 volt vehicle battery 167
- Charge 167
- Checking the condition 167
- Discharge protection 167
- Disconnecting and connecting 168
- Fault: 168
- Safety 20
- see 12 volt vehicle battery 167
- Warning lights 168

A

ABS 143
ACC 147
- Distance adjustment 148
- Interruption of cruise control 148
- START-STOP system 147

Accident data recorder 202
Activation of online services 126
Adaptive Cruise Control 147
Air conditioning
- see Climatronic 60
- see Manual air conditioning 59

Airbag 47
- Deactivating the front passenger airbag 48
- Fault: 48
- Installation locations 47
- Release 47
- Safety 47

Alarm system 31
- Trailer 31

All-season tyres 173
Ambient lighting 56
Analogue instrument cluster 63
Android Auto
- Infotainment Amundsen 118
- Infotainment Bolero 96
- Infotainment Swing 81
- see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5

Anonymous vehicle data 127
Apple CarPlay
- Infotainment Amundsen 118
- Infotainment Bolero 96
- Infotainment Swing 81
- see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5

Armrest
- front 39
- rear 39

Ashtray 190
ASR 143
Assist systems
- Driver assist 143
- Park Assist 155
- Safety 23

Automatic Braking
- See Front Assist 144

Automatic gearbox 136
- Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 137
- Manually switching gear with the selector lever 137

Automatic gearbox modes 136
Availability of ŠKODA Connect services 125

B

Battery acid 167
Bonnet 159
Boot
- Double-sided floor covering 184
- Fasteners 181
- Fastening nets 183
- Net partition 184
- Rigid cover 184
- see Boot lid 35
- Storage pocket 183
- Transporting objects safely 22
- Variable loading floor 184

Boot cover 184
Boot lid 36
- Automatic locking 35
- Manual operation 35
- to be set to the highest position 36
- Troubleshooting 36
- unlock manually 36

Brake fluid 141
- Safety 20

Brake pads 142
Brakes 141
- Handbrake 142

Breakdown call 132
Bulbs 53

C

Car adaptations
- Safety 19

Car seat

see Child seat 43
Cargo elements 181
Central locking 28
SAFE function 28
Central locking button 28
Centre console 14
Charging your phone wirelessly 189
Check the vehicle before your journey 21
Child lock 32
Child seat 43
Fastened with a safety belt 44
Grouping 44
i-Size 45
ISOFIX 44, 46
on the passenger seat 44
Recommended child seats 44
Securing children properly 22
TOP TETHER 46
Types of fasteners 46
Cigarette lighter 190
Cleaning the vehicle
Instructions for cleaning the Interior 197
Interior 197
Climatronic 60
CNG 164
Comfort flasher 50
COMING HOME 52
Coming home, leaving home
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Commissioning the vehicle
Using the jump-starting cable 168
Compartments 185, 186
Compressed natural gas 164
Control centre
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Control Centre
Infotainment Amundsen 103
Infotainment Bolero 86
Infotainment Swing 71
Coolant 161
Checking and refilling 161
Safety 20
Specification 161
Temperature gauge 161
Troubleshooting 161
Warning lights 161
Cooling system 59, 60
Crew Protect Assist
See Proactive Occupant Protection 154
Cruise control
Indicator light 146
Cruise control system 146
Cup holder 189
Cybernetic security
Infotainment Amundsen 112

D

Data connection 130
Daylight running lights 50
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 48
Display 48
Digital assistant Laura
infotainment Amundsen 102
Digital instrument cluster 64, 65
Distribution of the cargo 139
Door
Open/close 32
Door protect
see door protection strip 32
Door protection strip 32
Change 33
Driver Alert 154
see fatigue detection assistant 154
Driver's seat 14
Driving data 66
Reset to default 67
Driving in neutral 137
Driving with a trailer
Safety 23
DSR 143
Dynamic cornering lights 52
Activate/deactivate 52

E

Earth point 168
Economical driving
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Economical driving style 138
EDL 143
Electric windows 33
Activation 34
Force limiter 33
Operation 33
Troubleshooting 34
Emergency
Emergency call 24
Using the jump-starting cable 168
What to do after an accident 25
What to do in the event of a fire 25
Emergency calls 24
Emergency equipment 180
Car jack 181
Tool kit 181
Emergency wheel 174
Safe driving 23
Engine compartment 15
Coolant 161
Engine oil 160
Safety 20, 159
Engine number 200
Engine oil 160
Changing 160
Indicator light 160
Refilling 160
Safety 20
Specification 159

Engine specifications
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
EPC 162
ESC 143
Exhaust gas control system 162
Explanations 8
Exterior
lighting 49
Exterior mirrors 40
Extinguisher 180

F

Fasteners in the boot 181
Fault in the engine control system 162
First aid kit 180
Flooring in the boot 184
Fog lights 51
front 51
Fogged windows 60, 61
Folding table 191
Freewheel
Free-wheelingSee Driving in neutral 137
Front Assist 144
Front seats
Electrically operated child lock 37
Manually operated boot lid 37
Front vehicle area 11
Fuel
CNG 164
Petrol 163
Fuel tank
Open bonnet 163
Fuel tank lid 163
Fuses
In the engine compartment 171

G

G-TEC (natural gas vehicle) 164

H

Handbrake 142
Hazard warning light system 51
Headlights
Dynamic cornering lights 52
Headlight range control 49
Headrests 38
Heated steering wheel 62
Heated windscreen 61
Heating 59
HHC
see Hill Hold Control 143
High-beam assist system 52
Hill Hold Control 143
Hooks
In the boot 181
In the interior 186

I

i-Size 45
Ice scraper 13
ignition switch 134
Images
Amundsen Infotainment system 104, 111
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Immobilizer 135
Indicator lights
Overview 16
Information call 132
Infotainment Amundsen 99
Infotainment Bolero 84
Infotainment display
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Infotainment keypad
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
infotainment online 133
Infotainment overview
Infotainment Bolero 84
Infotainment Swing 69
Infotainment screen
Infotainment Amundsen 100
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Swing 70
Infotainment setting
Swing Infotainment system 69
Infotainment settings
Bolero Infotainment system 84
Infotainment Amundsen 99
Infotainment Swing 69
Infotainment system
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Infotainment update
Amundsen Infotainment system 100
Bolero Infotainment system 85
Swing Infotainment system 70
Instrument cluster
analogue 63
digital 64
Instrument cluster display 63
Instrument cluster display 63
Interior
lighting 55
Interior equipment
12-volt power socket 180, 185
Coat hooks 186
Cup holder 189
Glasses holder 185
Make-up mirror 185
Parking permit holder 185
Storage compartments 185, 186
Storage pockets 186
Interior fittings
12 volt socket 192
Ashtray 190
Cigarette lighter 190

Folding table 191
Multimedia holder 190
Storage compartment for the umbrella 188
Storage compartment under the front seat 188
Tablet holder 191
Interior lighting 55, 56
Ambient lighting 56
Operation 55
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Interior rear-view mirror 40
ISOFIX 46
Mounting eyelets 46
Placement in the seat 44

J

Jump start cables 168

K

Key 27
Key switch for airbag deactivation 48
Display 48
Key switch for the front passenger airbag
Key switch faulty 48
Keyboard
Infotainment Amundsen 101
Infotainment Bolero 86
Infotainment Swing 71
Keyless locking (KESSY) 30
Kick-down 137

L

Lane Assist 150
See Lane Assist 150
Lane change assist
See Side Assist 152
Lateral area of the vehicle 11
LEAVING HOME 52
Lever
Buttons 63
High-beam assist system 52
Main beam 50
Turn signal 50
Windscreen wipers and washers 56
Liability for faults
see Warranty 206
Lifting the vehicle 175
Light 49
Automatically switch on and switch off 50
Clean headlights 56
CORNER function 51
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 49
Dynamic cornering lights 52
Fog light 51
Hazard warning light system 51
Headlamp flasher 50
Headlight range adjustment of headlights 49
Indicator light 51
Main beam 50
Parking light 51
Replace light bulbs 53
Troubleshooting 49
Turn signal 50
Light Assist
see high beam assistant 52
Light switch 49
lightbulbs
Fog lights - change 54
Front flashing light - change 53
High beam - change 53
Rear flashing light - change 54
Reversing light - change 55
Lighting
Ambient lighting 56
Interior 55
outer 49
Lighting range 49
Lights
Control 49
Limiter
see speed limiter 145
Lock 30
Locking 28
Locking elements 169
Change 169
in dash panel 170
Low beam 50
Luggage compartment 180
12-volt power socket 180
Storage boxes 180
towing bracket switch 180
Luggage compartment equipment 180

M

Main beam 50
Management of online services 130
Manual air conditioning 59
Manual gearbox 136
MCB 143
Media
Infotainment Amundsen 107
Infotainment Bolero 89
Infotainment Swing 74
Playlist 108
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Mirror
see exterior mirror 40
MirrorLink
Infotainment Amundsen 118
Infotainment Bolero 96
Infotainment Swing 81
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Mobile device management
Infotainment Amundsen 112
Swing Infotainment system 77
Mobile devices management

Bolero Infotainment system 92
MSR 143
Multi-collision brake
see MCB 143
Multimedia holder 190
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5

N

Navigation
Amundsen Infotainment system 120
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Net partition 184
Nets 183
New vehicle or new parts 19
Notes on starting 134

O

Oil
see engine oil 160
Online services
Availability 125
MyŠKODA application 126
Shop 132
ŠKODA Connect 125
System update 131
User management 127
Online Services
Breakdown call 132
Data connection 130
Information call 132
Management of online services 130
Personalisation 129
Service schedules 133
Škoda Connect services 133
User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services 126
Vehicle status report 133

P

Park Assist systems 155
Park steering assistant 157
Troubleshooting 158
Parking
Parking aid 155
Rear Traffic Alert 156
Rear view camera 156
Stop the vehicle safely! 23
Parking aid 155
Parking brake 142
Parking light 51
ParkPilot
see Parking aid 155
Passenger seat 14
Pedestrian Detection 145
Personal data 126, 202
Personalisation 129
Personalization
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Petrol 163
other fuel 164
prescribed petrol 163
Refilling 163
Requirements for refuelling 163
Standards 163
Tank capacity 164
Phone
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Phonebox 189
Power sockets
12 volt socket 192
Safety 21
Power-assisted steering 39
Predictive Adaptive Cruise control 147

R

Radiator blinds 162
Radio
Infotainment Bolero 87
Infotainment Swing 72
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Radio systems in the vehicle 203
Rear armrest
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Rear fog light 51
Rear fog lights
rear 51
Rear seats
Folding down 37
Rear Traffic Alert 156
Rear vehicle area 13
Rear view camera 156
Operation 156
Recirculated air mode 59, 60
Refilling
Coolant 161
Engine oil 160
Petrol 163
Windscreen washer fluid 57
Reflective vest 180
Release 30
Remote access to the vehicle 133
Restarting the Infotainment system
Infotainment Amundsen 100
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Swing 70
Rights arising from defective performance
see Warranty 206
Roof rack 193
Attaching the carrier 193
Roof load 193
Safe driving 23

S

SAFE – function 28

Safe driving 23
Safety
Before your journey 19
Car adaptations 19
Child seat 22
Driving through water 23
Emergency call 24
Exiting the vehicle 24
Indicator lights 23
New vehicle or new parts 19
Sensors and cameras 20
sit properly 21
Transport cargo and objects 22
Weather conditions 24
Webbing route 21
What to do after an accident 25
What to do in the event of a fire 25
Scheduling a service visit
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Seat belts 42
Adjusting the height 43
Automatic belt retractor 42
Belt tensioners 42
correct arrangement 21
Fastening and unfastening 42
Reversible belt tensioner 42
Safety 42
Seat beltsBlocked strap 43
Status display 42
Seat heating 62
Seats 37
Folding down 37
Heating 62
ISOFIX 46
sit safely 21
TOP TETHER 46
Selector lever 137
Service events 196
Interval 196
Resetting information 196
Show service appointment 196
Service position for windscreen wiper arms 57
Service schedules 133
Service work 196
Set the air conditioning fan speed 61
Set tyre pressure values 178
Setting personal data protection 127
Shop 132
Side Assist 152
Side light 50
see Parking light 51
ŠKODA Connect services
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Sliding/tilting roof
electric operation of the sun blinds 34
SmartLink
Infotainment Amundsen 118
Infotainment Bolero 96
Infotainment Swing 81
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Snow chains 173
Spare wheel 174
Safe driving 23
Speed limit 67
Speed limit warning 67
Reset to default 67
Setting 67
Speed limiter 145
Indicator light 145
Sport Chassis Preset 138
START-STOP 135
Starter button 134
Starting 134
Starting the engine 134
Steering column lock 39, 40
Steering wheel 39
Buttons 39, 65
Buttons / dial 64
Correct position 22
Heating 62
Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 137
Stopping the engine 134, 135
Storage pocket 183
Sun protection 34
electric operation of the sun blinds 34
Sunshades
activation of the sunroof's sunshade control 34
Supported media files
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Supported media sources
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Switching low beam on automatically 50
Switching process
Manual gearbox 136
System
Amundsen Infotainment system 99
Bolero Infotainment system 84
Swing Infotainment system 69
System and Infotainment updates
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
System update 131

T

Tablet holder 191
Tank capacity
Petrol 164
Technical data and specifications 200
Vehicle dimensions 202
Telephone
Infotainment Amundsen 113
Infotainment Bolero 93
Infotainment Swing 78
Tips for economical driving 138
Tiptronic 137
Tool 181

TOP TETHER 46
Mounting eyelets 46
Touch operation
Infotainment Amundsen 100
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Swing 70
Tow hitch 193
Tow bar: swivel out/in 193
Troubleshooting 194
Vertical load 194
Tow rope 140
Towing a trailer 139
Trailer Stability Assist 143
Towing lug 140
Towing the vehicle 140
Traffic accident
Data recorder 202
Emergency call 24
What to do after an accident 25
Traffic Sign Recognition 153
Trailer 139
Alarm system 31
Coupling and uncoupling 194
Permissible weight 139
Safe driving 23
Trailer Stability Assist 143
Transport
Roof rack 193
Tow hitch 193
Transporting objects safely 22
Transporting children 22
Travel assist
see Travel Assist 151
Travel Assist 151
Trays 185, 186
TSA
see Trailer Stability Assist 143
Turn signal 50
Type plate 200
Tyre pressure monitor 178
Tyres 172, 173
Breakdown set 176
Overview of labelling 172
Pressure 177
Tread wear indicator 172
Tyre pressure monitor 178

U

Umbrella 188
Unlocking 28
USB 185, 186
User management 127
User registration 126

V

Variable loading floor in the boot 184
Vehicle adjustments
Recommendations 196
Vehicle cleaning
Exterior 198
Instructions for cleaning the outer area 199
Vehicle dimensions 202
Vehicle driving mode 138
Eco 138
Individual 138
Normal 138
Sport 138
Vehicle height 202
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 200
Vehicle length 202
Vehicle status 67
Vehicle status report 133
Vehicle width 202
Vehicle's health card
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5
Vest
see reflective vest 180
VIN
see vehicle identification number 200
Virtual cockpit
see digital instrument cluster 64
Voice control
Amundsen Infotainment system 102
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5

W

Warning lights
Foreword 16
Warning triangle 180
Warranty 206
Mobility Warranty 206
New car warranty 206
Optional Extended Warranty 206
Rights arising from defective performance 206
Wash in a car wash 198
Wash with a pressure washer 198
Waste container 190
Weight 200
Wheels 172
Aero full wheel covers 179
Breakdown 173
Changing 174, 175
Full wheel cover 179
Overview of tyre labelling 172
Pressure change 173
Snow chains 173
Spare wheel and emergency spare wheel 174
Tread wear indicator 172
Tyre pressure 177
Tyre pressure monitor 178
WheelsCover caps for the screws 178
Wi-Fi
Bolero Infotainment system 95
Infotainment Amundsen 116
Swing Infotainment system 80

Window 33
Heating 61
mechanical operation 33
Windscreen washer fluid
Windscreen washer fluidHow is the washer fluid refilled? 57
Windscreen washer fluidLevel too low 57
Windscreen washer system
see windscreen wiper and washer 56
Windscreen wipers and washers 56
automatic rear window wiping 57
automatic wiping 57
Refilling windscreen washer fluid 57
Replace the windscreen wiper blade 57
Unfold the windscreen wiper arms 57
Windscreen washer fluid level too low 57
Winter tyres 173
WLAN
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 5

X

XDL + 143